

555-8321-910

Meridian

HomeOffice II

Command Shell User Guide

Standard 01.01 Release 2.1 July 1998

NORTEL

NORTHERN TELECOM

Meridian

HomeOffice II

Command Shell User Guide

Document number: 555-8321-910

Document status: Standard 01.01

Product release: Release 2.1

Date of issue: July 1998

© 1998 Northern Telecom

All rights reserved

All information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Northern Telecom reserves the right to make changes to equipment design or program components, as progress in engineering, manufacturing methods, or other circumstances may warrant.

NORTEL, the NORTEL Globemark, RAPPORT, and MERIDIAN are trademarks of Northern Telecom. MICROSOFT, MS-DOS, and WINDOWS are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. NETWARE is a trademark of Novell, Inc. UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, exclusively licensed through X/OPEN Company Limited. SHIVA is a trademark of Shiva Corporation.

Publication history

July 1998

This is the Standard 01.01 issue of the *Command Shell User Guide* for Release 2.1 of Meridian HomeOffice II. The *Command Shell User Guide* explains how to access the HomeOffice Router command shell and how to use it for configuration.

Contents

About this document	xi
What this document contains	xi
Version and issue of HomeOffice II documentation	xi
Application of version and issue in this documentation release	xi
Who should read this guide	xii
How this guide is organized	xii
Conventions used in this guide	xiii
Command line interfaces	xiii
Graphical user interfaces	xiv
<hr/>	
Accessing the command shell	1-1
Using Local Manager to access the command shell	1-2
Using a terminal session to access the command shell	1-4
Using a Telnet session to access the command shell	1-7
<hr/>	
Shell commands overview	2-1
Introduction	2-1
Non-privileged mode commands	2-2
admin (a)	2-3
fault (f)	2-4
help (h)	2-5
quit (q)	2-6
statistics (ss)	2-7
status (st)	2-8
Privileged mode commands	2-9
Navigating in the privileged mode	2-11
Entering commands	2-11
Using shortcuts	2-12

Universal context commands 2-13

- close (cl) 2-14
- connections (con) 2-15
- help (h) and help (?) 2-17
- open (o) 2-19
- ping (p) 2-20
- quit (q) 2-22
- resume (res) 2-23

Top-level context commands 2-24

- boot (b) 2-25
- fault (fa) 2-26
- statistics (ss) 2-27
- status (st) 2-28

Alphabetical quick reference **3-1**

Bridge context shell commands **4-1**

Introduction 4-1

Bridge general sub-context commands 4-2

- configure (conf) 4-3
- forward (fo) 4-5
- statistics (ss) 4-6

Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands 4-8

- circuit (ci) 4-9
- configure (conf) 4-11
- enabled (e) 4-12
- forward (fo) 4-13
- statistics (ss) 4-14

Bridge filter sub-context commands 4-16

- data (da) 4-17
- destination (de) 4-27
- enabled (e) 4-30
- source (so) 4-31
- statistics (ss) 4-34

Bridge span sub-context commands 4-35

- configure (conf) 4-36
- enabled (e) 4-39

port (po)	4-40	
reset (rst)	4-42	
status (st)	4-43	
IP context shell commands		5-1
IP general sub-context commands	5-2	
address (ad)	5-3	
arp (ar)	5-5	
dhcp (d)	5-6	
enabled (e)	5-8	
forward (fo)	5-9	
icmp (i)	5-10	
relay (re)	5-12	
rip (ri)	5-16	
route (ro)	5-19	
statistics (ss)	5-22	
IP interface sub-context commands	5-23	
address (ad)	5-25	
arp (ar)	5-28	
association (as)	5-30	
circuit (ci)	5-34	
diat (d)	5-36	
enabled (e)	5-39	
icmp (i)	5-41	
lookup (l)	5-43	
relay (re)	5-44	
rip (ri)	5-47	
spoof (sp)	5-51	
IP filter sub-context commands	5-52	
attachments (a)	5-54	
copy (co)	5-56	
create (cr)	5-57	
display (d)	5-61	
edit (e)	5-62	
remove (r)	5-66	
test (te)	5-67	
IPX context shell commands		6-1
IPX general sub-context commands	6-2	
address (ad)	6-3	
datalink (d)	6-6	
enabled (e)	6-8	

- filtersap (fs) 6-9
- forward (fo) 6-12
- rip (ri) 6-14
- route (ro) 6-15
- sap (sa) 6-19
- service (ser) 6-20
- statistics (ss) 6-25
- IPX interface sub-context commands 6-27
 - address (ad) 6-29
 - association (as) 6-34
 - circuit (ci) 6-38
 - datalink (d) 6-40
 - diat (di) 6-42
 - enabled (e) 6-43
 - lookup (l) 6-45
 - rip (ri) 6-46
 - sap (sa) 6-48

Network context shell commands

7-1

- Network general sub-context commands 7-2
 - decode (d) 7-3
 - multilink (m) 7-6
 - ppp (pp) 7-8
- Network interface sub-context commands 7-10
 - activate (ac) 7-12
 - address (ad) 7-13
 - alias (al) 7-17
 - bap (ba) 7-19
 - callback (cb) 7-21
 - calls (ca) 7-22
 - circuit (ci) 7-24
 - configure (conf) 7-38
 - default (d) 7-43
 - enabled (e) 7-44
 - multilink (m) 7-46
 - ppp (pp) 7-49
 - rates (rat) 7-52
 - rejects (rej) 7-54
 - security (sec) 7-56
 - statistics (ss) 7-63
 - status (st) 7-68

test (te)	7-69	
timer (ti)	7-75	
tune (tu)	7-77	
vcs (v)	7-84	
<hr/>		
SNMP context shell commands		8-1
community (com)	8-2	
manager (m)	8-5	
traps (tra)	8-8	
validate (v)	8-11	
<hr/>		
System context shell commands		9-1
backup (b)	9-3	
configuration (conf)	9-4	
edit (e)	9-5	
isdn (i)	9-6	
more (m)	9-9	
password (pa)	9-10	
prompt (prom)	9-11	
protocols (prot)	9-12	
reset (rst)	9-14	
restore (r)	9-16	
save (sa)	9-17	
security (se)	9-18	
signon (si)	9-19	
statistics (ss)	9-20	
store (st)	9-21	
timeout (ti)	9-22	
trace (tra)	9-23	
upgrade (upg)	9-35	
version (v)	9-37	
warnings (w)	9-38	
<hr/>		
Index		10-1

About this document

What this document contains

This document describes the following for HomeOffice Router Release 2.1:

- how to access the HomeOffice Router command shell by using
 - Local Manager
 - terminal session
 - Telnet session
- how to use the command shell to configure the HomeOffice Router

Version and issue of HomeOffice II documentation

The version and issue of Meridian HomeOffice II documents are indicated by a four-digit document release number (for example, 01.01). The first two digits indicate the version or release of the product. The second two digits indicate the issue of the documentation.

The first two digits increase by one each time the document content is changed to support a new HomeOffice II release. For example, the first release of a document is 01.01, and the next release of the document in a subsequent HomeOffice II release is 02.01. The second two digits increase by one each time a final document is revised and re-released for the same HomeOffice II release.

Application of version and issue in this documentation release

HomeOffice II documentation release 01.02 is assigned to this issue of *Command Shell User Guide* to support HomeOffice II Release 2.1.

Who should read this guide

This guide is intended for the use of HomeOffice II network managers and administrators.

How this guide is organized

This guide is organized into the following chapters.

Accessing the Command Shell

This chapter describes the methods for accessing the command shell.

Shell commands overview

This chapter provides general instructions on

- using the command shell interface
- using non-privileged and privileged mode commands
- using universal and top-level context commands

Bridge context shell commands

This chapter provides instructions on using shell commands to manage the following bridging functions for the router:

- managing bridging filters
- managing Ethernet and ISDN interfaces
- showing bridging statistics
- showing the bridge forwarding table

IP context shell commands

This chapter provides instructions on using shell commands to manage the following IP routing functions for the router:

- configuring general IP parameters
- configuring parameters for Ethernet and ISDN interfaces
- configuring IP filtering

IPX context shell commands

This chapter provides instructions on using shell commands to manage the following IPX routing functions for the router:

- configuring general IP parameters
- configuring parameters for Ethernet and ISDN interfaces

Network context shell commands

This chapter provides instructions on using shell commands to manage the following physical network interfaces for the router:

- configuring WAN links
- managing Ethernet and ISDN interfaces

SNMP context shell commands

This chapter provides instructions on using shell commands to manage the router's SNMP communities, managers, and traps.

System context shell commands

This chapter provides instructions on using shell commands to set up various parameters that affect the functionality of your local display.

Index

The Index provides an alternate method of locating information in this document.

Conventions used in this guide

Command line interfaces

File and directory names, and prompts and responses in a command line interface are shown in the `courier` font.

The key(s) you are asked to press to complete a command are shown in angle brackets.

Example 1

At the command shell prompt, type the following and press <Enter>:

```
network <interface> configure
```

where <interface> is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

Example 2

You may find that you also need to edit the `/etc/hosts/` and `/etc/networks` files on the host computer. Consult your system's documentation for further information.

Graphical user interfaces

Names of menus, buttons, and lists that you choose in a graphical user interface (such as Windows) are shown in bold typeface.

Example

Choose **Save** and then choose **Exit** from the File menu to save your changes.

Accessing the command shell

Each Meridian HomeOffice Router provides a command shell through which you can configure and manage the unit. You can access the command shell in a number of ways:

- using Local Manager
- using a terminal session
- using a Telnet session

Once you are in the command shell, refer to the “Shell commands overview” chapter for further information.

Procedure 1-1

Using Local Manager to access the command shell

As well as providing a graphical user interface for easy monitoring and management of the HomeOffice Router, the Local Manager allows access to the command shell.

Requirements

In order to access the command shell using the Local Manager, the computer must be connected to the HomeOffice Router either through the serial cable or through the Ethernet cable (both supplied with the router).

Action

Step	Action
1	Start Local Manager. <i>A device selection dialog appears.</i>
2	In the device selection dialog, select the router you wish to access, and the connection type. For example, the local router through the COM port. <i>Local Manager opens.</i>
3	Click the Configuration tab.
4	Click the Power or Admin icons on the Configuration tab. <i>A menu appears.</i>

—continued—

Procedure 1-1 (continued)

Using Local Manager to access the command shell

Step Action

5 Select the option you need.

If you select	Then
SNMP, IP Filter, or Set Password	<p><i>the relevant context of the command shell opens.</i></p> <p>You may have to enter a password.</p> <p><i>You are connected to the router in the privileged mode. You see one of the following prompts:</i></p> <pre>HomeOffice:snmp HomeOffice:ip filter HomeOffice:system</pre>
Add'l Configurations	<p><i>the command shell opens at the top of the privileged mode.</i></p> <p><i>You are connected to the router in the privileged mode. The prompt you see is:</i></p> <pre>HomeOffice:</pre>

—end—

Procedure 1-2

Using a terminal session to access the command shell

You can use a terminal program under Windows 3.x or Windows95 to access the HomeOffice Router command shell through a serial connection. This connection is made using the serial cable between a COM port (for example, COM2) on the Windows computer and the admin connector on the router.

The procedures given are based on the terminal program supplied with the version of Windows on your computer.

Requirements

In order to access the command shell using a terminal session, your computer must be connected to the HomeOffice Router through the serial cable (supplied with the router).

Action

Step	Action
------	--------

Windows 3.x

- 1 Run the Windows terminal program.
- 2 Under the Settings menu, select **Communications**.
- 3 Set the following parameters:
 - a. Bits per second: **9600**
 - b. Data bits: **8**
 - c. Stop bits: **1**
 - d. Parity: **no parity**
 - e. Connector: Choose the COM port connected to the router.

- 4 Press <Enter>.

You are connected to the router in the non-privileged mode. The prompt you see is:

Command:

—continued—

Procedure 1-2 (continued)

Using a terminal session to access the command shell

Step	Action
5	If you want to enter the privileged mode, enter <code>admin</code> and press <Enter>. <i>You are prompted for the password.</i>
6	Enter the password and press <Enter>. <i>The following prompt appears:</i> HomeOffice :

Windows95

- 1 Run the Windows95 **HyperTerminal** program.
- 2 If you have already saved a HomeOffice Router connection configuration, open this connection by selecting **File - Open** and choosing the connection. If you have not saved a HomeOffice Router connection configuration:
 - a. Select **File - New Connection**.
A new connection dialog box appears.
 - b. Enter a name and choose an icon for the new connection.
 - c. Click **OK**.
The Phone Number dialog box appears.
 - d. In the Phone Number dialog **Connect using:** drop-down menu, select the COM port to which your router is connected, for example, **Direct to COM2**.
 - e. Click **OK**.
The Port Settings dialog box appears.
 - f. In the Port Settings dialog set the following parameters:
 - Bits per second: **9600**
 - Data bits: **8**
 - Stop bits: **1**
 - Parity: **no parity**

—continued—

Procedure 1-2 (continued)

Using a terminal session to access the command shell

Step	Action
	<p>g. Click OK.</p> <p><i>Your new connection is saved, and you are connected to the router.</i></p>
3	<p>Press <Enter>.</p> <p><i>You are connected to the router in the non-privileged mode. The prompt you see is:</i></p> <p>Command:</p>
4	<p>If you want to enter the privileged mode, enter <code>admin</code> and press <Enter>.</p> <p><i>You are prompted for the password.</i></p>
5	<p>Enter the password and press <Enter>.</p> <p><i>The following prompt appears:</i></p> <p>HomeOffice:</p>

—end—

Procedure 1-3

Using a Telnet session to access the command shell

You can use a Telnet program under Windows 3.x or Windows95 to access the HomeOffice Router command shell through a serial connection. This connection is made using Ethernet.

The procedures given are based on the Telnet program supplied with the version of Windows on your computer.

Note: Telnet access is used only for administrative functions in the command shell. Once connected, you are at the privileged level. When you quit the command shell, the Telnet connection is dropped.

Requirements

In order to access the command shell using a Telnet session, the computer must be connected to the HomeOffice Router by Ethernet.

Action

Step	Action
1	Run the Telnet application. At the File Run command prompt, enter <code>telnet</code> <i>The Telnet program starts.</i>
2	Under the Connect menu, select Remote system . <i>The Remote System dialog box appears.</i>
3	In the Remote System dialog box, set the following parameters: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Host name: Enter the IP address of the router. b. Port: Select telnet. c. TermType: Select vt100.

—continued—

Procedure 1-3 (continued)

Using a Telnet session to access the command shell

Step	Action
-------------	---------------

4	Click connect .
----------	------------------------

You are connected to the command shell at the privileged level. You must enter a password when requested.

5	Enter the password.
----------	---------------------

You are connected to the router in the privileged mode. The prompt you see is:

HomeOffice :

—end—

Shell commands overview

Introduction

Meridian HomeOffice Router commands are available in two modes (or levels):

- non-privileged
- privileged

Non-privileged mode

Non-privileged commands are available to all users; you do not require a password. These commands are available as soon as you log on to the router. Use them, for example, to display statistics or to move to the privileged mode.

You can enter non-privileged mode from either the Local Manager or through a terminal session.

Descriptions of non-privileged mode commands begin on page 2-2.

Privileged mode

Privileged commands are accessed using the `admin` command at the initial router prompt, and are used to configure the router. To access privileged commands you must enter a password. The commands you use to configure the router are grouped into contexts and sub-contexts, according to the network and task type.

You can enter privileged mode from either the Local Manager, through a terminal session, or through a Telnet session.

Descriptions of privileged mode commands begin on page 2-9.

Non-privileged mode commands

Non-privileged mode commands are available as soon as the router is powered on. You do not need to enter a password.

When you are in the non-privileged mode, the system prompt is:

command:

The following commands are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Description
admin	a	Enter privileged mode. You must enter a valid password.
fault	f	Report on conditions indicated by the test LED.
help	h	Display a list of available commands.
quit	q	Return the admin line to idle.
statistics	ss	Display throughput information.
status	st	Display information about the status of each interface.

Note: To display a list of non-privileged commands, enter `help`.

Non-privileged mode commands

admin (a)

Command purpose

The `admin` command lets you enter administration mode and configure the router.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `admin` command is as follows:

```
command: admin
```

Using the command

Once you have entered `admin`, the router prompts you for a password. When the router is shipped, the password is `hello`.

We recommend you change the password immediately using the `system password` command; otherwise the router is not secure. Be sure to keep the password in a safe place. Once you enter the correct password, you enter the administration level.

Note: You cannot enter administration level (privileged mode) if someone is already administering the router. Only one administrator at a time can have access to the administration level.

Non-privileged mode commands

fault (f)

Command purpose

The `fault` command gives details of start-up problems. It does not take a parameter.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `fault` command is as follows:

```
command: fault
```

Using the command

The test LED on the front panel of the router flashes RED when a fault is detected. In this case, type `fault` to discover the nature of the fault.

Non-privileged mode commands

help (h)

Command purpose

The `help` command displays

- which commands are available in the current, all, and the following contexts
- which options and parameters can be used with a command
- the spelling of a command

Command syntax

The syntax of the `help` command is as follows:

```
command: help
```

Using the command

Refer to the description beginning on page 2-17.

Non-privileged mode commands

quit (q)

Command purpose

The `quit` command sets the command line to idle and exits non-privileged mode.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `quit` command is as follows:

```
command: quit
```

If you wish to re-enter non-privileged mode, press <Enter>.

Note: After you enter `quit`, the screen below the command line is blank.

Non-privileged mode commands

statistics (ss)**Command purpose**

The `statistics` command in non-privileged mode displays a summary of throughput information.

Note: This command is also available in most privileged sub-contexts.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `statistics` command is as follows:

```
command: statistics
```

Using the command

Display the throughput statistics by entering

```
statistics
```

The total number of frames and datagrams transmitted and received on each interface similar to the following appears.

Interface	Frames	Frames Received		Size	Bits/sec
		Octets			
eth1	10945 (99.77%)	4740179 (99.96%)		433	3227
isdn2	25 (0.22%)	1533 (0.03%)		61	1
Total	10970	4741712			

Interface	Frames	Frames Transmitted		Size	Bits/sec
		Octets			
eth1	1258 (97.21%)	88046 (98.52%)		69	59
isdn2	26 (2.00%)	1296 (1.45%)		49	0
Total	1294	89362			

Protocol	Datagram Statistics		Transmitted
	Received	Forwarded	
ip	8602	406	1635

Note: There may be a difference between the number of datagrams forwarded and transmitted. This is because the network layer protocol (IP or CLNP) can transmit a packet to a higher layer of the protocol stack, without that packet ever being forwarded across the network to another device.

Non-privileged mode commands

status (st)

Command purpose

The status command provides information about the physical state of each interface.

Command syntax

The syntax of the status command is as follows:

```
command: status
```

Using the command

Display the interface status by entering

```
status
```

Status information similar to the following appears:

```
Physical Links
```

```
Interface Type Variant State Bandwidth Duration
1 eth1 Ethernet Auto up 10000000 103d 4h 59m 1s
2 isdn2 isdn BRI down 128000 2h 5m 23s
```

Column	Description
Interface	Tells you the name of the interface.
Type	Tells you the type of interface.
Variant	Tells you which technology the interfaces use.
State	Possible states are up, down, testing, and disabled.
Bandwidth	Tells you the volume of bps an interface can carry.
Duration	Refers to the total length of time the interface has been in its current state.

Note: If an ISDN interface is reported as up, this does not mean that it is forwarding. It means that software has loaded successfully.

Privileged mode commands

Privileged mode commands are accessed using the `admin` command at the initial `Command:` prompt, and are used to configure the router. To access privileged commands, you must enter a password. The default password is `hello`. Once you have entered privileged mode, the following prompt appears:

```
HomeOffice:
```

Note: You should change the password immediately by using the `system password` command.

The commands you use to configure the router are grouped into contexts and sub-contexts. The following table lists the contexts, sub-contexts, command shell prompt for the current context, available commands in each context, and the page number where the command descriptions begin.

Context	Sub-context	System prompt	Available commands
universal	all sub-contexts	HomeOffice:	close, connections, help, open, ping, quit, resume
top	not applicable	HomeOffice:	boot, fault, statistics, status
bridge	general	HomeOffice: bridge general	configure, forward, statistics
	eth1	HomeOffice: bridge eth1	configure, enabled, forward, statistics
	isdn2	HomeOffice: bridge isdn2	circuit, forward, statistics
	filter	HomeOffice: bridge filter	data, destination, enabled, source, statistics
	span	HomeOffice: bridge span	configure, enabled, port, reset, status
—continued—			

2-10 Shell commands overview

Context	Sub-context	System prompt	Available commands
ip	general	HomeOffice: ip general	address, arp, dhcp, enabled, forward, icmp, relay, rip, route, spoof, statistics
	eth1	HomeOffice: ip eth1	address, arp, diat, enabled, icmp, relay, rip
	isdn2	HomeOffice: ip isdn2	address, association, circuit, diat, enabled, icmp, lookup, rip
	filter	HomeOffice: ip filter	attachments, copy, create, display, edit, remove, test
ipx	general	HomeOffice: ipx general	address, datalink, enabled, filtersap, forward, rip, route, sap, service, statistics
	eth1	HomeOffice: ipx eth1	address, datalink, enabled, rip, sap
	isdn2	HomeOffice: ipx isdn2	address, association, circuit, datalink, diat, enabled, lookup, rip, sap
network	general	HomeOffice: network general	decode, multilink, ppp
	eth1	HomeOffice: network eth1	address, alias, configure, enabled, statistics, status
	isdn2	HomeOffice: network isdn2	activate, address, alias, bap, callback, calls, circuit, configure, default, enabled, multilink, ppp, rates, rejects, security, statistics, status, test, timer, tune, vcs
snmp	-	HomeOffice: snmp	community, manager, traps, validate
system	-	HomeOffice: system	backup, configuration, edit, isdn, more, password, prompt, protocols, reset, restore, save, security, signon, statistics, store, timeout, trace, upgrade, version, warnings
—end—			

Navigating in the privileged mode

Your current level or context/sub-context in the command shell is indicated by the system prompt, as shown in the preceding table. The following table describes how to navigate from one level to another.

If the level you want to enter is	Then	Example
below your current level	Type the lower-level name and press <Enter>.	You are at the <code>HomeOffice:</code> prompt and want to go to <code>HomeOffice: ipx eth1</code> . Type <code>ipx eth1</code> and press <Enter>.
above your current level but not at the top	Type the upper-level name and press <Enter>.	You are at the <code>HomeOffice: ipx eth1</code> prompt and want to go to <code>HomeOffice: ipx</code> . Type <code>ipx</code> and press <Enter>.
in another context	Type the full context name and press <Enter>.	You are at the <code>HomeOffice: ipx eth1</code> prompt and want to go to <code>HomeOffice: bridge isdn2</code> . Type <code>bridge isdn2</code> and press <Enter>.
the top level, where the prompt is <code>HomeOffice:</code>	Type <code>top</code> and press <Enter>.	You are at the <code>HomeOffice: ipx eth1</code> prompt and want to go to <code>HomeOffice:.</code> Type <code>top</code> and press <Enter>.
non-privileged mode	Type <code>quit</code> and press <Enter>.	You are at the <code>HomeOffice: bridge isdn2</code> prompt and want to exit non-privileged mode. Type <code>quit</code> and press <Enter>. The prompt is now <code>command:.</code>

Entering commands

You can issue commands in the same way as you change levels, as described in the preceding table. That is:

- If the command is valid at your current level, type the command and parameters, if required, and press <Enter>. For example, if you are at the `HomeOffice: network general` prompt and want to issue the `ppp` command, you type `ppp` and press <Enter>.

- If the command is in a different level, type the context name, command, and parameters, if required, and press <Enter>. For example, if you are at the HomeOffice: network general prompt and want to issue the bridge span status command, you type `bridge span status` and press <Enter>.

Using shortcuts

Each command described in this document is listed under its full name and shortcut or abbreviation. You can use the shortcut instead of typing the full name.

Universal context commands

The following commands are available in all contexts. Most of them involve the opening and management of Telnet connections. You can make up to three Telnet calls to hosts over the network. Used in this way, the router acts like a terminal server.

The following table describes the commands available in all contexts.

Command	Shortcut	Description
close	cl	Closes the current connection, named connection, or all connections.
connections	con	Shows connections, full information on a named connection, or full information on all connections.
help	h or ?	Displays possible commands or help about commands and contexts.
open	o	Opens a Telnet connection with a host.
ping	p	Pings a remote device.
quit	q	Exits to non-privileged level.
resume	res	Resumes the current or named connection.

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To exit to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

Note: You need to press <Break> or <Ctrl-C> to switch out of a current session before you can use the following commands: `close`, `connections`, `open`, `remote`, `resume`, and `send`.

Universal context commands

close (cl)

Command purpose

The `close` command closes the current connection, named connection, or all connections.

Note: To display a list of connections, use the `connections` command.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `close` command is as follows:

```
close <connection>
```

where `<connection>` is an optional parameter.

The following table describes the parameters.

Parameter	Meaning	Example
(blank)	The current connection is closed.	<code>close</code>
<code>all</code>	All connections are closed. <i>Note:</i> You cannot use the <code>close all</code> command during a remote administration session.	<code>close all</code>
integer	The specified connection is closed.	<code>close 3</code>

Using the command

To close a particular connection, enter `close`, followed by the connections number. For example, `close 3`.

A list of the remaining connections similar to the following appears. An asterisk indicates the current connection:

```
* connection 1 - 90.2.3.4  
connection 2 - 44.5.6.7
```

Universal context commands

connections (con)

Command purpose

The `connections` command displays information about open connections, or full information on a specific connection.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `connections` command is as follows:

```
connections [<parameter>]
```

where `<parameter>` is an optional parameter.

The following table describes the parameters.

Parameter	Meaning	Example
(blank)	The currently open connections are listed.	<code>connections</code>
IP address or integer	Details of the specified connection are listed.	<code>connections 3</code>

Using the command

Displaying details about currently open connections

To display details about currently open connections, enter `connections`.

A list of the open connections similar to the following appears. An asterisk indicates the current connection.

```
Connections open:  
* connection 1 - 89.1.2.3  
  connection 2 - 34.08.91.2
```

Universal context commands
connections (con) (continued)

Displaying detailed information for a specific connection

To display detailed information about current connections, enter
connections <IP address or connection number>.

A list of the open connection's details similar to the following appears. An asterisk indicates the current connection.

Local admin line : 3 VC Max, 9600 Baud

```
* connection 1 - 89.1.2.3
Telnet state : data transfer 28 secs
TCP state    : established
Echo mode    : remote
Binary mode  : on
```

Universal context commands

help (h) and help (?)

Command purpose

The `help` command displays

- which commands are available in the current, all, and the following contexts
- which options and parameters can be used with a command
- the spelling of a command

Using the command

Command help

To view the commands available in the current, all, and the following contexts, enter `help`.

Help text similar to the following appears. (This example is from the top context.)

The following commands are available in the top context:

```
boot (b) help (h) status (st)
fault (fa) statistics (ss)
```

The following commands are available in all contexts:

```
close (cl) open (o) quit (q)
connections (con) ping (pi) resume (res)
```

Further commands are available in the following contexts:

```
system snmp network bridge ip ipx
```

Option and parameter help

To view the options and parameters available for a particular command, enter the command followed by `?`. For example, `system configuration ?`.

Help text similar to the following appears:

Enter one of the following:

```
summary (s) <Return>
```

Universal context commands
help (h)(?) (continued)

Command spelling help

If you are unsure of how to spell a command, type the first letter followed by ?. The possible ways of completing a valid command line appear.

For example, to determine how to spell the command `statistics` in the `top` context, enter `top s?`.

All possible commands in that context beginning with "s" similar to the following appear. (This example is from the `top` context.)

The following commands are available :
`statistics (ss) status (st)`

Universal context commands

open (o)

Command purpose

The `open` command establishes a connection to a host. The connection is made using the serial cable between a COM port (for example, COM2) on the Windows computer and the admin connector on the router. You can open up to three connections simultaneously.

Note: If you enter an IP address, the router assumes a port number of 23 (the default port number for Telnet sessions) unless you specify otherwise.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `open` command is as follows:

```
open <host IP address>
```

Note: The IP address can be in decimal or hexadecimal format.

Using the command

To open a connection to a host, enter `open` followed by the IP address of the host. For example, `open 29.84.30.21`.

If the open command is successful, the host's login prompt similar to the following appears:

```
open 29.84.30.21
Break-in character is <Break>
Trying to make connection...
<Open>
RISC/os (Admin3)
login:
```

Universal context commands

ping (p)

Command purpose

The `ping` command sends a specified number of Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) Echo Requests and measures the time taken for the destination device to respond to each request. You can ping another router or host to see if your router can make contact.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `ping` command is as follows:

```
ping
```

Using the command

- 1 To attempt to make contact with another router or host, enter `ping`.

The router prompts for the Internet address of the device to ping.

```
Host <Internet address> :
```
- 2 Enter the Internet address.

The router prompts for the size of the ICMP requests. The default size is 64 data bytes.

```
Data size in packet <8 - 1472> (64) :
```
- 3 Enter the data size.

If you want to accept the default, press `<Enter>`.

The router prompts for the number of ICMP requests to send. The default value is 16.

```
Number of ICMP requests to send <1-1000000000>(16) :
```
- 4 Enter the number of ICMP requests to send.

If you want to accept the default, press `<Enter>`.

The router prompts for the time between successive pings. The default is 1000 ms.

```
Interping delay <1 - 60000> (1000) :
```

Universal context commands
ping (p) (continued)

- 5** Enter the time between pings.
If you want to accept the default, press <Enter>.

The response may look similar to the following:

```
Pinging 41.6.9.8: 64 data bytes.  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 1 time = 10 ms  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 2 time = 10 ms  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 3 time = 10 ms  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 4 time = 10 ms  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 5 time = 0 ms  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 6 time = 10 ms  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 7 time = 10 ms  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 8 time = 10 ms  
72 bytes from 41.6.9.8: icmp_seq = 9 time = 0 ms  
Host 41.6.9.8 replied to all 9 of the 9 pings
```

If the target router or host replied to the pings, this means that you have full connectivity to the host.

Universal context commands

quit (q)

Command purpose

The `quit` command allows you to leave privileged mode or close the session during a remote administration session.

Note: The `quit` command is also available as a non-privileged command.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `quit` command is as follows:

```
quit
```

Using the command

To exit privileged mode, enter `quit`.

The following message appears as you leave the privileged mode.

```
Exiting privileged mode  
command:
```

To re-enter privileged mode, use the `admin` command.

Universal context commands

resume (res)**Command purpose**

The `resume` command lets you access a connection that is already open but is not being used. The connection must have been made using the serial cable between a COM port (for example, COM2) on the Windows computer and the admin connector on the router.

Note: You cannot use this command during a remote administration session.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `resume` command is as follows:

```
resume [<parameter>]
```

where `<parameter>` is an optional parameter.

The following table describes the parameters.

Parameter	Meaning	Example
(blank)	The current connection is resumed.	<code>resume</code>
IP address or integer	The specified connection is resumed.	<code>resume 3</code>

Using the command

To resume a connection to a specific host, enter `resume` followed by the IP address of the host or the connection number. For example, `resume 63.49.20.01`.

A response similar to the following appears:

```
Connection resumed to 63.49.20.01
```

Top-level context commands

When you are in privileged level (for instance, by entering `admin` in the non-privileged mode), the top-level context commands are available immediately.

In the top-level context, the command prompt is:

```
HomeOffice:
```

The following top-level context commands are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Description
<code>boot</code>	<code>b</code>	Restarts the HomeOffice Router.
<code>fault</code>	<code>fa</code>	Reports on conditions indicated by a red TEST light.
<code>statistics</code>	<code>ss</code>	Displays packet throughput information.
<code>status</code>	<code>st</code>	Displays physical interface status.

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To exit to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

Top-level context commands

boot (b)

Command purpose

The boot command lets you restart the router's software.

Note: You have to wait a few seconds until the router has restarted before it is available for configuration.

Command syntax

The syntax of the boot command is:

```
HomeOffice: boot
```

Using the command

- 1 Restart the router by entering

```
boot
```

The router prompts you to confirm this action:

```
Do you wish to restart the unit now <YES or NO> (no) :
```

- 2 Enter `yes` to confirm or press `<Enter>` to cancel.

If you choose to restart, the following message appears:

```
Restarting HomeOffice .....
```

The router performs a short hardware self-test and then loads its software.

Note: If the hardware self-test fails, the TEST light on the front panel of the router slowly flashes red. If this happens, please contact your supplier.

Top-level context commands

fault (fa)

Command purpose

The `fault` command provides details of start-up problems. If the fault light, which is labeled TEST and is situated on the front panel of the router, flashes red, a fault has occurred. Use the `fault` command to discover the nature of the fault.

Note: This command is also available in non-privileged mode.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `fault` command is:

```
HomeOffice: fault
```

Top-level context commands

statistics (ss)

Command purpose

The `statistics` command displays a summary of throughput information.

Note: This command is also available in non-privileged mode and most privileged sub-contexts.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `statistics` command is:

```
HomeOffice: statistics
```

Using the command

- 1 Display the throughput statistics by entering

```
statistics
```

The total number of frames and datagrams transmitted and received on each interface similar to the following appears:

		Frames Received			
Interface	Frames		Octets		Size Bits/sec
eth1	10945	(99.77%)	4740179	(99.96%)	433 3227
isdn2	25	(0.22%)	1533	(0.03%)	61 1
Total	10970		4741712		

		Frames Transmitted			
Interface	Frames		Octets		Size Bits/sec
eth1	1258	(97.21%)	88046	(98.52%)	69 59
isdn2	26	(2.00%)	1296	(1.45%)	49 0
Total	1294		89362		

		Datagram Statistics		
Protocol	Received	Forwarded	Transmitted	
ip	8602	406	1635	

Note: The difference between the number of datagrams forwarded and transmitted arises because the network layer protocol (IP, IPX, or CLNP) can transmit a packet to a higher layer of the protocol stack, without that packet ever being forwarded across the network to another device.

Top-level context commands

status (st)

Command purpose

The status command provides information about the physical state of each interface.

Note: This command is also available in non-privileged mode.

Command syntax

The syntax of the status command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: status
```

Using the command

Display the interface status by entering

```
status
```

Status information similar to the following appears:

```
Physical Links
```

```
Interface Type Variant State Bandwidth Duration
1 eth1 Ethernet Auto up 10000000 103d 4h 59m 1s
2 isdn2 isdn BRI down 128000 2h 5m 23s
```

Column	Description
Interface	Tells you the name of the interface.
Type	Tells you the type of interface.
Variant	Tells you which technology the interfaces use.
State	Possible states are up, down, testing, and disabled.
Bandwidth	Tells you the volume of bps an interface can carry.
Duration	Refers to the total length of time the interface has been in its current state.

Note: If an ISDN interface is reported as up, this does not mean that it is forwarding. It means that software has loaded successfully.

Alphabetical quick reference

This chapter lists all the commands in alphabetical order. Use this quick reference if you cannot remember the contexts in which a particular command is valid.

Command	Shortcut	Context/sub-context	See
activate	ac	network isdn2	page 7-12
address	ad	ip general ip eth1 or isdn2 ipx general ipx eth1 or isdn2 network eth1 or isdn2	page 5-3 page 5-25 page 6-3 page 6-29 page 7-13
admin	a	non-privileged	page 2-3
alias	al	network eth1 or isdn2	page 7-17
arp	ar	ip general ip eth1	page 5-5 page 5-28
association	as	ip isdn2 ipx isdn2	page 5-30 page 6-34
attachments	a	ip filter	page 5-54
backup	b	system	page 9-3
bap	ba	network isdn2	page 7-19
boot	b	top	page 2-25
—continued—			

3-2 Alphabetical quick reference

Command	Shortcut	Context/sub-context	See
callback	cb	network isdn2	page 7-21
calls	ca	network isdn2	page 7-22
circuit	ci	bridge isdn2 ip isdn2 ipx isdn2 network isdn2	page 4-9 page 5-34 page 6-38 page 7-24
close	cl	universal	page 2-14
community	com	snmp	page 8-2
configuration	conf	system	page 9-4
configure	conf	bridge general bridge eth1 bridge span network eth1 or isdn2	page 4-3 page 4-11 page 4-36 page 7-38
connections	con	universal	page 2-15
copy	co	ip filter	page 5-56
create	cr	ip filter	page 5-57
data	da	bridge filter	page 4-17
datalink	d	ipx general ipx eth1	page 6-6 page 6-40
decode	d	network general	page 7-3
default	d	network isdn2	page 7-43
destination	de	bridge filter	page 4-27
dhcp	d	ip general	page 5-6
diat	d di	ip eth1 or isdn2 ipx isdn2	page 5-36 page 6-42
—continued—			

Command	Shortcut	Context/sub-context	See
display	d	ip filter	page 5-61
edit	e	ip filter system	page 5-62 page 9-5
enabled	e	bridge eth1 bridge filter bridge span ip general ip eth1 or isdn2 ipx general ipx eth1 or isdn2 network eth1 or isdn2	page 4-12 page 4-30 page 4-39 page 5-8 page 5-39 page 6-8 page 6-43 page 7-44
fault	f	non-privileged top	page 2-4 page 2-26
filtersap	fs	ipx general	page 6-9
forward	fo	bridge general bridge eth1 or isdn2 ip general ipx general	page 4-5 page 4-13 page 5-9 page 6-12
help	h or ?	non-privileged universal	page 2-5 page 2-17
icmp	i	ip general ip eth1 or isdn2	page 5-10 page 5-41
isdn	i	system	page 9-6
lookup	l	ip isdn2 ipx isdn2	page 5-43 page 6-45
manager	m	snmp	page 8-5
more	m	system	page 9-9
—continued—			

3-4 Alphabetical quick reference

Command	Shortcut	Context/sub-context	See
multilink	m	network general network isdn2	page 7-6 page 7-46
open	o	universal	page 2-19
password	pa	system	page 9-10
ping	p	universal	page 2-20
port	po	bridge span	page 4-40
ppp	pp	network general network isdn2	page 7-8 page 7-49
prompt	prom	system	page 9-11
protocols	prot	system	page 9-12
quit	q	non-privileged universal	page 2-6 page 2-22
rates	rat	network isdn2	page 7-52
rejects	rej	network isdn2	page 7-54
relay	re	ip general ip eth1	page 5-12 page 5-44
remove	r	ip filter	page 5-66
reset	rst	bridge span system	page 4-42 page 9-14
restore	rst	system	page 9-16
resume	res	universal	page 2-23
rip	ri	ip general ip eth1 or isdn2 ipx general ipx eth1 or isdn2	page 5-16 page 5-47 page 6-14 page 6-46
—continued—			

Command	Shortcut	Context/sub-context	See
route	ro	ip general ipx general	page 5-19 page 6-15
sap	sa	ipx general ipx eth1 or isdn2	page 6-19 page 6-48
save	sa	system	page 9-17
security	sec se	network isdn2 system	page 7-56 page 9-18
service	ser	ipx general	page 6-20
signon	si	system	page 9-19
source	so	bridge filter	page 4-31
spoof	sp	ip eth1	page 5-51
statistics	ss	non-privileged top bridge general bridge eth1 or isdn2 bridge filter ip general ipx general network eth1 system	page 2-7 page 2-27 page 4-6 page 4-14 page 4-34 page 5-22 page 6-25 page 7-63 page 9-20
status	st	non-privileged top bridge span network eth1 or isdn2	page 2-8 page 2-28 page 4-43 page 7-68
store	st	system	page 9-21
test	te	ip filter network isdn2	page 5-67 page 7-69
—continued—			

3-6 Alphabetical quick reference

Command	Shortcut	Context/sub-context	See
timeout	ti	system	page 9-22
timer	ti	network isdn2	page 7-75
trace	tra	system	page 9-23
traps	tra	snmp	page 8-8
tune	tu	network isdn2	page 7-77
upgrade	upg	system	page 9-35
validate	v	snmp	page 8-11
vcs	v	network isdn2	page 7-84
version	v	system	page 9-37
warnings	w	system	page 9-38
—end—			

Bridge context shell commands

Introduction

The `bridge` context manages the router's bridging functions. The commands are grouped into the sub-contexts listed in the following table.

Sub-context	Description
<code>general</code>	Commands for bridging statistics and showing the Bridge forwarding table.
<code>eth1</code>	Commands for managing an Ethernet interface.
<code>isdn2</code>	Commands for managing an ISDN interface.
<code>filter</code>	Commands for managing bridge filtering.
<code>span</code>	Commands for managing the Spanning Tree Algorithm.

Some protocols need to have certain parameters set up separately for each interface. Commands dealing with these parameters are not described in the `bridge general` context, but in the protocol-specific sections. For instance, commands that are available only in the `filter` or `span` sub-contexts are described in the appropriate sections.

Bridge general sub-context commands

In the `bridge general` sub-context, the command prompt is:

```
HomeOffice: bridge general
```

The following `bridge general` sub-context commands are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Description
<code>configure</code>	<code>conf</code>	Defines the Bridge forwarding table time-out period.
<code>forward</code>	<code>fo</code>	Displays the Bridge forwarding table for all interfaces.
<code>statistics</code>	<code>ss</code>	Displays bridging statistics for all interfaces.

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To quit and return to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

Bridge general sub-context commands

configure (conf)

Command purpose

In the `bridge general` sub-context, the `configure` command defines the entry time-out period in the Bridge forwarding database for all bridging interfaces.

The Bridge forwarding database stores the addresses of destination hosts and the elapsed time a packet was last received from them. If a host is on the same segment of the network, the corresponding entry is used to localize traffic to it. The time-out value defined with this command is the length of time an entry is stored in the Bridge forwarding table before being discarded.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `configure` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge general configure [<show>]
```

where `<show>` is an optional parameter that displays the current Bridge forwarding table entry time-out setting.

If no parameter is provided you are asked to provide a time-out setting.

Using the command

Displaying the current Bridge forwarding table entry time-out setting

Display the current Bridge forwarding table entry time-out setting by entering

```
bridge general configure show
```

A message similar to the following appears:

```
Bridge forwarding table entry timeout in seconds:  
200
```

Note: This value applies to all bridging interfaces.

Bridge general sub-context commands
configure (conf) (continued)

Changing the current Bridge forwarding table entry time-out setting

- 1 Change the current Bridge forwarding table entry time-out setting to 200 seconds by entering

```
bridge general configure
```

The router prompts you for a time-out value. The default is 300 seconds.

```
Bridge forwarding table entry timeout in seconds  
<10-1000000> (300):
```

- 2 Type 200 and press <Enter>.

A confirmation message similar to the following appears:

```
Bridge configuration updated:  
Bridge forwarding table entry timeout in seconds:  
200
```

 Bridge general sub-context commands

forward (fo)

Command purpose

The `forward` command lets you check the entries currently stored in the dynamic forwarding database for all bridging interfaces. The entries are shown separately for each interface.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `forward` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge general forward
```

Using the command

To display entries currently stored in the dynamic forwarding database for all bridging interfaces, enter

```
bridge general forward
```

A list of entries similar to the following appears:

```
Bridge Forwarding Table
```

```
Port : eth1      Entries : 12
00-00-6B-80-00-72  00-00-6B-80-08-F8      *00-00-6B-81-04-2C
00-00-6B-81-04-4E  00-00-6B-81-09-18      *00-00-6B-81-09-5E
00-00-6B-81-10-EE  00-00-6B-81-21-06      00-00-6B-81-24-26
00-00-6B-81-2C-7C  00-00-6B-81-2C-96      00-00-6B-81-2C-A2
-- MORE --
```

Note: In this example, the first interface shown is `eth1`, for which there are twelve entries.

Bridge general sub-context commands

statistics (ss)

Command purpose

This command displays or resets frame and packet statistics for each bridging interface. The entries are shown for each interface separately.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `statistics` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge general statistics
```

Using the command

- 1 To display or reset frame and packet statistics for each bridging interface, enter

```
bridge general statistics
```

The router prompts you to select either frames or reset (the default is frames).

```
Statistics <FRAMES or RESET> (frames) :
```

If you want to	Then
display frame and packet statistics	go to step 2
reset frame and packet statistics	go to step 3

- 2 To display frame and packet statistics, select frames.

A list of frame and packet statistics for each bridging interface similar to the following appears:

```
Bridge Statistics: eth1
```

```
Total frames in          :      878030 (100.00%)
  Forwarded to port       :         5991 (  0.68%)
  Port not forwarding     :         2399 (  0.27%)
  Filtered dynamically   :      869640 ( 99.04%)
  Filtered statically    :           0 (  0.00%)
```

```
Total frames out        :           1 (100.00%)
  Forwarded to port       :           0 (  0.00%)
  Port not forwarding     :           1 (100.00%)
  Filtered statically    :           0 (  0.00%)
```

 Bridge general sub-context commands
statistics (ss) (continued)

Bridge Statistics: isdn2

```

Total frames in           :           0 (  0.00%)
  Forwarded to port       :           0 (  0.00%)
  Port not forwarding     :           1 (100.00%)
  Filtered dynamically    :           0 (  0.00%)
  Filtered statically     :           0 (  0.00%)

Total frames out         :           1 (100.00%)
  Forwarded to port       :           0 (  0.00%)
  Port not forwarding     :           1 (100.00%)
  Filtered statically     :           0 (  0.00%)
  
```

Note 1: Forwarded to Port means that the frame has been transmitted out on this interface.

Note 2: Port not forwarding means that the port is not passing bridge traffic. For example, when Spanning Tree has shut it down to prevent a loop.

Note 3: Filtered dynamically means that the frame has been discarded because the router knows the destination is local and therefore the packet does not need to be sent across the WAN.

Note 4: Filtered statically counts the number of frames discarded as a result of a match with a filter configured by the user.

3 To reset frame and packet statistics, select `reset`.

The statistics for each bridging interface are reset, and the following message appears:

```
Bridge statistics have been reset.
```

Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands

The commands in the `bridge eth1` or `isdn2` sub-context let you manage the HomeOffice Router's Ethernet or ISDN interface.

The command prompts are:

```
HomeOffice: bridge eth1
```

```
HomeOffice: bridge isdn2
```

The following table describes the commands in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Interface	Description
circuit	ci	isdn2	Applies to ISDN interface only. Creates a circuit for a remote destination.
configure	conf	eth1	Applies to Ethernet interface only. Configures the priority of Ethernet interface.
enabled	e	eth1	Applies to Ethernet interface only. Enables or disables the bridge port state.
forward	fo	eth1 isdn2	Applies to both interfaces. Displays the Bridge forwarding table for all interfaces.
statistics	ss	eth1 isdn2	Applies to both interfaces. Shows static filtering statistics.

To display a list of available commands, type `help` or access online help. To exit back to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.



CAUTION Loss of connectivity

Be careful when changing bridge port configurations, especially in remote administration sessions; it is possible to exclude yourself from the unit, and you may need local administration to restore connectivity.

Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands

circuit (ci)**Command purpose**

The `circuit` command configures the ISDN interface for bridging.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `circuit` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge isdn2 circuit
```

Using the command

- 1 To configure the ISDN interface for bridging, enter
`bridge isdn2 circuit`
The router prompts for the name of the circuit.
Circuit Name <Up to 15 Characters or *> :
- 2 Enter the name of the circuit to configure.
The router prompts you to enable the circuit. The default is enabled.
Bridge port state <ENABLED or DISABLED> (enabled) :
- 3 Enable the bridge port to bridge traffic, if required, by pressing <Enter>. Otherwise type `disabled` to disable the circuit.
Note: You can enable the circuit later.
The router prompts you to add the bridge port path cost. The default is 15625.
Bridge port path cost <1 - 65535> (15625) :
- 4 Enter the bridge port path cost (this port's contribution to the Root Path Cost).
The Root Path Cost is the sum of the Path Costs of the bridges between this bridge and the Root Bridge, plus this port's contribution.
The router prompts you to add the bridge port priority. The default is 128.
Bridge port priority <1 - 255> (128) :
- 5 Enter the bridge port priority.

4-10 Bridge context shell commands

Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands **circuit (ci) (continued)**

When Spanning Tree sets up designated or root ports, it uses this value to assess the importance of the port on the network, when all other factors are equal. The lower the value, the greater the port's priority.

Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands

configure (conf)**Command purpose**

The `configure` command configures the Ethernet interface for bridging.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `configure` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge eth1 configure
```

Using the command

- 1 To define the bridge port priority for the Ethernet interface, enter

```
bridge eth1 configure
```

The router prompts you to add the bridge port path cost. The default is 100.

```
Bridge port path cost <1 - 65535> (100) :
```
- 2 Enter the bridge port path cost.
Note: The value you enter is confirmed at the end of the procedure.
The router prompts you to add the bridge port priority. The default is 128.

```
Bridge port priority <1 - 255> (128) :
```
- 3 Enter the bridge port priority.

The bridge port priority is used by Spanning Tree to indicate to other bridges that this particular port is hierarchically inferior or superior to other ports. In this way the root port can be determined, ensuring that Ethernet is used in preference to a WAN link. This is a way of keeping network costs down.

A confirmation of the changes similar to the following appears:

```
Bridge port configuration updated :  
Bridge port path cost: 300  
Bridge port priority: 255
```

Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands

enabled (e)

Command purpose

The `enabled` command lets you define the bridge port state on an Ethernet interface. The bridge port state defines whether or not the bridge port can bridge.



CAUTION

Loss of connectivity

If you are administering the router remotely over a bridged interface, be careful not to disable the bridge port from which you are accessing your router. If you do, you may have to use a local administration session to restore connectivity.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `enabled` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge eth1 enabled
```

Using the command

- 1 To define the bridge port state, enter
`bridge eth1 enabled`
The router prompts you to set the state. The default is `enabled`.
`Bridge port state <ENABLED or DISABLED> (enabled) :`
- 2 Enable the port by pressing <Enter>, or disable the port by typing `disabled`.

Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands

forward (fo)**Command purpose**

The `forward` command lets you check the entries currently stored in the dynamic forwarding database for the selected interface. It does not take a parameter.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `forward` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge <interface> forward
```

where `<interface>` is either `eth1` for the Ethernet interface or `isdn2` for the ISDN interface.

Using the command

To check the entries currently stored in the dynamic forwarding database for the Ethernet interface, enter

```
bridge eth1 forward
```

The Bridge Forwarding Table for interface eth1 appears. The display is similar to the following:

```
Bridge Forwarding Table
Port : eth1                               Entries : 84
00-00-6B-80-00-72      00-00-6B-80-08-F8      00-00-6B-81-04-2C
00-00-6B-81-04-4E      00-00-6B-81-09-18      00-00-6B-81-09-5E
00-00-6B-81-10-EE      00-00-6B-81-21-06      00-00-6B-81-24-26
00-00-6B-81-2C-7C      00-00-6B-81-2C-96      00-00-6B-81-2C-A2
08-00-39-00-44-FC      08-00-39-00-46-1C      08-00-39-00-5A-D4
08-00-39-00-5A-D6      08-00-39-00-5F-46      08-00-39-00-5F-48
08-00-39-00-70-01      08-00-39-00-70-03      08-00-39-00-70-04
08-00-39-00-70-D2      08-00-39-00-7D-E6      08-00-39-00-7E-BA
08-00-39-00-80-10      08-00-39-00-86-C8      08-00-39-00-88-20
08-00-39-25-00-02      08-00-39-25-00-05      08-00-39-25-00-11
08-00-39-25-00-12      08-00-39-25-05-90      08-00-39-39-39-12
08-00-39-4A-4D-10      08-00-39-4A-4D-A0      08-00-47-00-0A-A5
-- MORE --
```

Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands

statistics (ss)

Command purpose

The `statistics` command resets or displays bridging statistics.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `statistics` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge <interface> statistics <parameter>
```

where

- `<interface>` is either: `eth1` for the Ethernet interface or `isdn2` for the ISDN interface
- `<parameter>` is either `reset` or `frame`

Using the command

Displaying bridging statistics

To display bridging statistics for the Ethernet interface, enter

```
bridge eth1 statistics frame
```

In this example, the statistics for the Ethernet interface appear. The display is similar to the following:

```
Bridge Statistics: Port 1 (eth1)
```

```
Total frames in          :      0 (  0.00%)
  Forwarded to port      :      0 (  0.00%)
  Port not forwarding    :      0 (  0.00%)
  Filtered dynamically   :      0 (  0.00%)
  Filtered statically    :      0 (  0.00%)
    Destination         :          0
    Source               :          0
    Data                 :          0
```

**Bridge interface-specific sub-context commands
statistics (ss) (continued)**

Total frames out	:	86 (100.00%)
Forwarded to port	:	86 (100.00%)
Port not forwarding	:	0 (0.00%)
Filtered statically	:	0 (0.00%)
Destination	:	0
Source	:	0
Data	:	0

Resetting the statistics counter

To reset the statistics counter for the ISDN interface, enter

```
bridge isdn2 statistics reset
```

The statistics counter type for the ISDN interface is reset. The following confirmation appears:

```
Bridge statistics have been reset.
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

The `bridge filter` sub-context lets you manage bridge filtering.

Filtering is the process of testing whether a frame needs to be passed to another segment. A series of different filters or tests are used. If a frame does not pass through one of these filters (that is, it fails one of the tests), it is not passed on by the router.

Note: The bridge filter commands apply only to bridged traffic. They do not apply to IP or IPX traffic if these protocols are enabled for routing.



CAUTION

Loss of connectivity

Be extremely cautious when configuring filters that include your own Ethernet address: you may exclude yourself from your own network.

In the `bridge filter` sub-context, the command prompt is:

```
HomeOffice: bridge filter
```

The following commands for managing bridge filtering are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Description
<code>data</code>	<code>da</code>	Add, change, delete, or show data filters.
<code>destination</code>	<code>de</code>	Add, delete, or show destination filters.
<code>enabled</code>	<code>e</code>	Enable or disable the bridge static filters.
<code>source</code>	<code>so</code>	Add, delete, or show source filters.
<code>statistics</code>	<code>ss</code>	Show static filtering statistics.

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To exit to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

Note: If you configure a filter with one of the `bridge filter` sub-context commands, you must enable it with the `enable` command before it can take effect.

Bridge filter sub-context commands

data (da)**Command purpose**

The `data` command lets you configure or display data filters. Data filters filter packets by comparing their contents with a number of specified data sequences or ranges. These sequences or ranges can occur anywhere in the packet.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `data` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge filter data <parameter>
```

The following table describes the parameters.

Parameter	Description	For instructions, see
add	Adds a data filter.	page 4-17
change	Changes the characteristics of a data filter.	page 4-23
delete	Deletes a data filter.	page 4-24
mode	Defines the ways in which filtering operates on the specified port.	page 4-25
show	Displays all data filters and their state.	page 4-26

Using the command**Adding a data filter**

- To add a data filter, enter


```
bridge filter data add
```

The router prompts you to enter a filter name.

```
Data filter name <up to 15 characters> :
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

data (da) (continued)

- 2** Enter the name of the new data filter.
The router prompts you to set the state of the filter. The default is enabled.
State <DISABLED or ENABLED> (enabled) :
- 3** Enter enabled if you want the filter to be used immediately.
If you enable the filter and the data mode parameter is set to specific, the router prompts you to discard or forward packets. The default is discard.
If you enter disabled, the filter will exist but will not be used until you enable it.
The router prompts as follows:
Number of sequences to test <1 - 4> (1) :
- 4** Enter the number of sequences to test.
Action <DISCARD or FORWARD> (discard) :
- 5** Choose discard or forward.
This action applies to packets on a per-filter basis. It is linked to the Filtering criteria prompt described below. For example, if you choose discard at this prompt, and the result of sequence-checking corresponds to the filtering criteria that you choose, the packet is automatically discarded.
The following prompt appears only if you choose discard:
Discard on receive ports <comma separated port list up to 23 characters, ALL or NONE>
Current : (all)
New :
- In Specific mode (see the description of data mode in "Defining a data filter's mode" on page 4-25), you can use data filtering to filter or forward packets as they enter or leave a port.

 Bridge filter sub-context commands
data (da) (continued)

- 6** If you want filtering to be used as packets enter a port, type the port numbers you require. If you do not want to use filtering at this point, type `none`.

The following prompt appears:

```
Discard on transmit ports <comma separated port
list up to 23 characters, ALL or NONE>
```

```
Current : (all)
```

```
New      :
```

- 7** If you want filtering to be used as packets leave a port, type the port numbers you require. If you do not want to use filtering at this point, type `none`.

The following prompt appears:

```
Selection criteria <ALLMATCH, ANYDIFFERENT or
ANYSMATCH> (allmatch) :
```

- 8** Choose the filter criteria.

The filtering criteria determines whether or not the packet is forwarded. The three options refer to the number of sequences you have tested.

Selection criteria	Description
ALLMATCH	This means a packet is forwarded or discarded (depending on the action you selected) if it meets all the filter criteria you define in the filters below.
ANYDIFFERENT	This means a packet is forwarded or discarded if it is different from any of the filter criteria you define in the filters below.
ANYSMATCH	This means a packet is forwarded or discarded if it matches any of the filter criteria you define in the filters below.

The following prompt appears:

```
Number of sequences to test <1-4> (1) :
```

```
Sequence 1:
```

```
Sequence type <MATCH or RANGE> (match) :
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

data (da) (continued)

- 9** Type the sequences you want to test.
Sequences are strings of hexadecimal numbers. The contents of packets are compared with these strings, and the packets are then rejected or accepted according to whether they meet the selection criteria defined.
- 10** Specify the type of sequences you want to test.
Use one of the following prompts:

Sequence type	Description
MATCH	A match sequence contains a fixed string of hexadecimal numbers. This must be repeated at the appropriate location within a packet for the packet to be accepted.
RANGE	A range sequence contains a hex number range. A packet must contain a number within this range, at the appropriate location, for the packet to be accepted.

If you enter `RANGE` instead of `MATCH` at this prompt, some of the subsequent prompts are different. Since this option can differ for each sequence, you can mix `range` and `match` sequence types in one filter.

These prompts are described in the following table:

Sequence type	Prompts displayed
match or range	Sequence offset <0-1510 octets> (0) : 10 This prompt is the same for <code>match</code> and <code>range</code> sequence types. The sequence offset defines the distance from the beginning of the packet, in octets, where the comparison starts. For example, if you enter 10, the router checks if the sequence is present, starting at the tenth octet of each packet.
—continued—	

 Bridge filter sub-context commands
data (da) (continued)

Sequence type	Prompts displayed
match	<p>Sequence length <1-6 octets> (4) :</p> <p>Define the appropriate sequence length. The sequence length is measured from the offset. The longer the sequence length, the stricter the filter. For example, if you enter 2, this means that the first two octets after the offset (inclusive) are used for comparison with the mask. You can have a sequence length of up to six octets.</p> <p>Sequence mask <8 hex digits> :</p> <p>11001100</p> <p>Enter the sequence mask in hexadecimal. This string is ANDed to the octets you have chosen to compare in the packet. The result of this action is compared to the sequence match (see next prompt). If there are any differences, the packet will not match and will be filtered (discarded).</p> <p>Sequence match <8 hex digits> :</p> <p>08000000</p> <p>Enter the sequence match in hexadecimal. This corresponds to the type field for protocols. For example, if you want to forward only IP packets, set the forwarding mode to ONLY, and the match to 0800 (IP's type field). Refer to RFC 1661 for type field values of other protocols. The sequence match is compared with the sequence mask above.</p>
—continued—	

Bridge filter sub-context commands

data (da) (continued)

Sequence type	Prompts displayed
range	<p>Sequence length <1, 2 or 4 octets> (4) :</p> <p>Define the appropriate sequence length (maximum value, 4 octets). The sequence length is measured from the offset. For example, if you enter 1, this means that the octet at the offset is used for comparison with the mask. You can have a sequence length of up to six octets.</p> <p>Sequence lower bound <0-4294967295> : 0</p> <p>Define the start of the sequence number range. The sequence lower and upper bounds mark the range of octets within which the router looks for the packet data. These values are inclusive.</p> <p>Sequence upper bound <0-4294967295> : 213434677</p> <p>Define the end of the sequence number range.</p>
—end—	

When you have added a MATCH data filter, it appears as follows:

Data filter added:

```
Name : systest1           State : enabled
Sequence 1 : match
  Offset : 0 octets Mask : 11772299
  Size : 4 octets Match : 11332266
```

 Bridge filter sub-context commands
data (da) (continued)

When you have added a RANGE data filter, it appears as follows:

Data filter added:

```

Name          : systest2          State : enabled          d
Sequence 1   : range
Offset       : 2 octets          Lower bound : 0
Size         : 4 octets          Upper bound : 213434677
  
```

Changing the characteristics of a data filter

- 1 To change the characteristics of a data filter, enter

```
bridge filter data change
```

The following prompt appears:

```
Data filter name <up to 15 characters or *> :
systest1
```

- 2 Enter the name of the data filter whose characteristics you want to change.

The following prompt appears:

```
Data filter name <up to 15 characters> (systest1) :
```

- 3 Change the name of the data filter, if required.

The following prompts are the same as for data add if you selected SPECIFIC mode. Refer to that description to see what values you can change.

```
State <DISABLED or ENABLED> (disabled) :
```

```
Action <DISCARD or FORWARD> (discard) :
```

```
Discard on receive ports <comma separated port list
up to 23 characters, ALL or NONE>
```

```
Current : (all)
```

```
New      :
```

```
Discard on transmit ports <comma separated port
list up to 23 characters, ALL or NONE>
```

```
Current : (all)
```

```
New      :
```

```
Selection criteria <ALLMATCH, ANYDIFFERENT or
ANYMATCH> (allmatch) :
```

```
Number of sequences to test <1-4> (1) :
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

data (da) (continued)

```
Sequence 1 :
  Sequence type <MATCH or RANGE> (match) :
  Sequence offset <0-1510 octets> (0) :
  Sequence length <1-6 octets> (4) :
  Sequence mask <8 hex digits> (12345678) :
  Sequence match <8 hex digits> (23456789) :
```

The new data filter details appear.

Deleting a data filter

- 1** To delete a data filter, enter

```
bridge filter data delete
```

The following prompt appears:

```
Data filter name <up to 15 characters or *> :
systest2
```

- 2** Enter the name of the data filter you want to delete, or * to list all data filters, for selection.

When you press <Enter>, the filter appears.

```
Name          : systest2      State          : disabled
Sequence 1   : range
  Offset      : 2 octets      Lower bound    : 0
  Size        : 4 octets      Upper bound    : 213434677
```

```
Delete data filter <YES or NO> : yes
```

- 3** Enter *yes* to confirm the deletion.

The following appears:

```
Data filter deleted.
```

 Bridge filter sub-context commands
data (da) (continued)

Defining a data filter's mode

1 To define the ways in which filtering operates on this port, enter
 bridge filter data mode.

2 Respond to the following prompt.

```
Port filtering <GENERAL or SPECIFIC> (specific):
general
```

If you select GENERAL, there are two further prompts. You are not prompted for DISCARD or FILTER in each specific filter.

Port filter type	Description
GENERAL	The same filtering is used on all entries in the table.
SPECIFIC	Different filters are used for different ports. This is useful for preventing specific types of packets from going through specific ports.

The following prompt appears:

```
Forwarding mode <ONLY or EXCEPT> (except) : only
```

3 Select the forwarding mode you require.

Packets are forwarded as follows:

Forward mode	Description
ONLY	Only packets with the specified address are to be forwarded.
EXCEPT	All packets except those to specified addresses are to be forwarded.

The following prompt appears only if you selected general in step 2:

```
Ports <comma separated port list up to 23
characters, ALL or NONE>
Current : (none)
New      : all
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands
data (da) (continued)

4 Define the ports on which this filter operates.
When you have changed the forwarding mode for this filter, you see
Forwarding mode updated:
Port filtering : GENERAL - all filters apply to the
filtering ports.
Forwarding mode: ONLY - only packets specified
by
these filters are being
forwarded.
Filtering ports: all
If you selected other options in the previous prompts, the display may
differ. For example:
Port filtering <GENERAL or
SPECIFIC>(general):specific
Forwarding mode updated:
Port filtering : SPECIFIC - packets are being
filtered only on the bridge ports specified in
each filter.

Displaying data filters and their states

The following command

```
bridge filter data show
```

displays all data filters and their state as follows.

Name	State	Action	Sequences	Filter Hits
systest 1	enabled	-	1	0

Port filtering : GENERAL - all filters apply to the
filtering ports.

Forwarding mode: EXCEPT - all packets being
forwarded except those specified by these filters.

Bridge filter sub-context commands

destination (de)**Command purpose**

The `bridge filter destination` command lets you configure or show destination filters. A destination filter selects packets, using their destination Ethernet address as a sorting criterion.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `destination` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge filter destination <parameter>
```

The following table describes the parameters.

Parameter	Description	For instructions, see
add	Adds a destination filter.	page 4-27
delete	Deletes a destination filter.	page 4-28
mode	Defines how destination filtering operates.	page 4-28
show	Displays all destination filters and their setup.	page 4-29

Using the command**Adding a destination filter**

- 1 To add a destination filter, enter

```
bridge filter destination add
```

The router prompts you to enter the Ethernet address of the destination device that is used as the sorting criterion:

```
Ethernet address <12 hex characters> :
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

destination (de) (continued)

- 2 Enter the Ethernet address (12 hex characters) of the destination device. For example:

```
0000c0c6ff61
```

A message similar to the following appears:

```
Destination filter added:
Ethernet address : 0000c0c6ff61
```

Deleting a destination filter

- 1 To delete a destination filter, enter

```
bridge filter destination delete
```

The router prompts you to enter the Ethernet address of the destination filter that you want to delete:

```
Ethernet address <12 hex characters, or *> :
```
- 2 Enter the Ethernet address of the destination filter that you want to delete.

Note: Enter * to display a list of filters.

A list similar to the following appears:

```
Destination filters: 00006B800072 00006B8008F8
00006B81042C
```

After selecting a filter for deletion (for example, 00006B81042C), a message similar to the following appears:

```
Destination filter deleted:
Ethernet address : 00006B81042C
```

Defining how a destination filter operates

- 1 To define how a filter operates, enter

```
bridge filter destination mode
```

The router prompts you to select port filtering. The default is general.

```
Port filtering <GENERAL> (general) :
```

 Bridge filter sub-context commands
destination (de) (continued)

2 Press <Enter>.

The router prompts you to select the forwarding mode. The default is except.

Forwarding mode <ONLY or EXCEPT> (except) :

3 Select the forwarding mode by entering only or except.

Forward mode type	Description
only	This means only packets with the specified address are to be forwarded.
except	This means all packets except those to specified addresses are to be forwarded.

If you update the filter mode, the new setup similar to the following appears:

```
Forwarding mode updated:
Port filtering :GENERAL - packets are being filtered
on all bridge ports.
Forwarding mode: ONLY - only packets with the
specified addresses are being forwarded.
```

Displaying all destination filters

To display destination filters, enter

```
bridge filter destination show
```

Destination filters and their setup similar to the following appear:

```
Destination filters 111111111111
Port filtering : GENERAL - packets are being filtered
on all bridge ports.
Forwarding mode: EXCEPT - all packets being forwarded
except those to the specified addresses.
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

enabled (e)

Command purpose

The `bridge filter enabled` command lets you enable or disable all bridge static filters according to their type.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `enabled` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge filter enabled
```

Using the command

- To enable or disable bridge static filters, enter

```
bridge filter enabled
```

The router prompts you to select the state of destination filtering. The default is disabled.

```
Destination filtering <ENABLED or DISABLED> (disabled) :
```
- To activate destination filtering, enter

```
enabled
```

The router prompts you to select the state of source filtering. The default is disabled.

```
Source filtering <ENABLED or DISABLED> (disabled) :
```
- To activate source filtering, enter

```
enabled
```

The router prompts you to select the state of data filtering. The default is disabled.

```
Data filtering <ENABLED or DISABLED> (disabled) :
```
- To activate data filtering, enter

```
enabled
```

If you change the filtering setup, the new setup similar to the following appears:

```
Filtering updated:
Destination filtering      : enabled
Source filtering           : enabled
Data filtering             : enabled
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

source (so)

Command purpose

The `bridge filter source` command lets you configure or show source filters. A source filter selects packets, using their source Ethernet address as a sorting criterion.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `source` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge filter source <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `delete`, `mode`, or `show`.

Using the command**Adding a source filter**

- 1 To add a source filter, enter

```
bridge filter source add
```

The router prompts you to enter an Ethernet address of the source device used as the sorting criterion.

```
Ethernet address <12 hex characters> :
```

- 2 Enter the Ethernet address (12 hex characters) of the source device used as the sorting criterion.

A confirmation message similar to the following appears:

```
Source filter added:
```

```
Ethernet address : 00006B81042C
```

Deleting a source filter

- 1 To delete a source filter, enter

```
bridge filter source delete
```

The router prompts you to enter an Ethernet address of the source device you want to delete.

```
Ethernet address <12 hex characters, or *> :
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

source (so) (continued)

- 2 Enter the Ethernet address (12 hex characters) of the source device you want to delete.

A confirmation message similar to the following appears:

```
Source filter deleted:
Ethernet address : 00006B81042C
```

Defining the packets to be forwarded

- 1 To define the packets to be forwarded, enter

```
bridge filter source mode
```

The router prompts you to specify the type of filtering (the default is general):

```
Port filtering <GENERAL or SPECIFIC> (general) :
```

- 2 Specify the type of filtering by entering `general` or `specific`.

Filter type	Description
<code>general</code>	This means the same filtering is used on all entries in the tables.
<code>specific</code>	This means different filters are used for different ports. This is useful for sending specific types of packets to specific ports.

If you specified `general`, the router prompts you to specify the forwarding mode. The default is `except`.

```
Forwarding mode <ONLY or EXCEPT> (except) :
```

- 3 Specify the type of filtering by entering `only` or `except`.

Filter type	Description
<code>only</code>	This means only packets with a specified address are forwarded.
<code>except</code>	This means all packets are forwarded except those to specified addresses.

Bridge filter sub-context commands
source (so) (continued)

If you change the mode setup, information similar to the following appears:

```
Port filtering : GENERAL - packets are being
filtered on all bridge ports.
```

```
Forwarding mode: ONLY    - only packets with the
specified addresses are being forwarded.
```

Displaying source filters and their setup

To display all source filters with their setup, enter

```
bridge filter source show
```

All source filters and their setup similar to the following appear:

```
Source filters
115522884499
Port filtering : GENERAL - packets are being
filtered on all bridge ports.
```

```
Forwarding mode: ONLY    - only packets with the
specified addresses are being forwarded.
```

```
-- MORE --
```

Bridge filter sub-context commands

statistics (ss)

Command purpose

The `bridge filter statistics` command lets you display static filtering statistics for bridging.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `statistics` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge filter statistics
```

Using the command

To display static filtering statistics for bridging, enter

```
bridge filter statistics
```

Information similar to the following appears:

Filter name	Discarded Packets	Filter Hits
Source	5	129
Destination	2787	2787
Data	0	0
Total	0	0

Note 1: If the number of discarded packets differs from the number of filter hits, this indicates that the `ONLY` option is active for filtering.

Note 2: If the number of discarded packets equals the number of filter hits, this indicates that the `EXCEPT` option is active for filtering.

Bridge span sub-context commands

The `bridge span` sub-context lets you manage the Spanning Tree Algorithm. This algorithm blocks some bridge ports so that there is only one path between any two devices on the network. This prevents loops and adds resilience, as some links become standby links. However, using the Spanning Tree Algorithm may increase traffic across links, and it also lengthens paths between devices. As a result, traffic may be delayed.

In the `bridge span` sub-context, the command prompt is:

```
HomeOffice: bridge span
```

The following commands are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Description
<code>configure</code>	<code>conf</code>	Configure Spanning Tree priorities.
<code>enabled</code>	<code>e</code>	Enable or disable the Spanning Tree Algorithm.
<code>port</code>	<code>po</code>	Show the Spanning Tree port status.
<code>reset</code>	<code>rst</code>	Reset the Spanning Tree and Path Optimization algorithms.
<code>status</code>	<code>st</code>	Display Spanning Tree status.

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To return to non-privileged mode, enter `quit`.

Bridge span sub-context commands

configure (conf)

Command purpose

The `bridge span configure` command lets you configure the priority of your router. The bridge priority is used by Spanning Tree to indicate to other bridges that this particular bridge is hierarchically inferior or superior to other bridges. In this way the root bridge can be determined, ensuring that Ethernet is used in preference to a WAN link. This is a way of keeping network costs down.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `configure` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge span configure
```

Using the command

Configuring bridge priority

Note: In this procedure, the range of values shown in parentheses varies depending on the values defined in the root bridge.

- 1 To configure bridge priority, enter

```
bridge span configure
```

The router prompts you to specify a bridge priority value.

```
Bridge priority <0-65535> (32767) :
```

- 2 Specify the bridge priority by entering a number in the indicated range.

The bridge priority shows the importance of the router on the network. The bridge priority generally determines which bridge/router or bridge is the root or designated bridge, although path cost and port priority (not affected by this command) are also taken into account.

The current default value is shown in parentheses. The lower the value, the greater the router's priority.

The router prompts you to specify a bridge forward delay value.

```
Bridge forward delay <4-30> (15) :
```

Bridge span sub-context commands
configure (conf) (continued)

- 3** Specify the bridge forward delay by entering a number in the indicated range.
- The bridge forward delay value is the time in seconds that a router spends listening and then learning before it starts forwarding. If this value is set to five seconds, for example, the router listens for five seconds, then learns for a further five seconds before starting to forward packets.
- A long delay gives the router more time to learn addresses so that when the device begins forwarding, fewer irrelevant frames are included. It also increases the possibility that network topology will be stable when it starts forwarding.
- The current default value is shown in parentheses.
- The router prompts you to specify the bridge maximum age value.*
- ```
Bridge max age <6-28> (20) :
```
- 4** Specify the bridge maximum age by entering a number in the indicated range.
- The bridge maximum age is the time, in seconds, that a router holds information it receives from other devices. If a hello message is not received from a device within this time, the device is assumed to be no longer present. This leads to network reconfiguration. The maximum age must be long enough to let hello messages through. On a busy network, you may need a higher value.
- The current default value is shown in parentheses.
- The router prompts you to specify the bridge hello time value.*
- ```
Bridge hello time <1-9> (2) :
```
- 5** Specify the bridge hello time by entering a number in the indicated range.
- The bridge hello time is the interval in seconds between hello messages. These are sent out regularly by the Root Bridge.
- The current default value is shown in parentheses.
- The router prompts you to specify the multicast (group) address.*
- ```
Group address <12 hex characters or DEFAULT> :
```

## Bridge span sub-context commands

### **configure (conf)** (continued)

---

- 6 If you want to set up a domain, enter its multicast address by entering either 12 hex characters or `default` to accept the default address.

The multicast address is used by Spanning Tree. The default address is 0180C2000000.

*When you have set values for all the parameters, the updated configuration appears.*

Spanning tree configuration updated:

```
Bridge priority : 32767
Bridge forward delay : 20
Bridge max age : 25
Bridge hello time : 1
Group address : 0180C2000000 (default)
```

### **Displaying the current Spanning Tree configuration**

To display the current Spanning Tree configuration, enter

```
bridge span configure show
```

*The current Spanning Tree configuration similar to the following appears:*

```
bridge span configure show

Bridge priority : 32767
Bridge forward delay : 16
Bridge max age : 21
Bridge hello time : 1
Group address : 0180C2000000 (default)
```

## Bridge span sub-context commands

**enabled (e)**

---

**Command purpose**

The `bridge span enabled` command lets you enable or disable the Spanning Tree Algorithm.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `enabled` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge span enabled
```

**Using the command**

- 1 To enable or disable the Spanning Tree Algorithm, enter

```
bridge span enabled
```

*The router prompts you to specify the state.*

```
Spanning tree <ENABLED or DISABLED> (enabled):
```

- 2 Specify the state by entering `enabled` or `disabled`.

When you enable or disable Spanning Tree, there is a short delay before you can continue using your router; this is because the router is reconfiguring itself.

*When you change the Spanning Tree configuration, information similar to the following appears:*

```
Spanning tree updated:
Spanning tree : enabled
```

Bridge span sub-context commands

## port (po)

---

### Command purpose

The `bridge span port` command displays Spanning Tree port status information.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `port` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge span port
```

### Using the command

To display Spanning Tree port status information, enter

```
bridge span port
```

*Information similar to the following appears:*

```
Port 1 : eth1
 State : forwarding
 Cost : 100
 Designated bridge - priority, address : 32767,050800390070D2
 Designated port - priority, ID : 0, 2
 Designated port cost : 0

Port 2 : isdn2
 State : forwarding
 Cost : 15625
 Designated bridge - priority, address : 32767,0800390087D4
 Designated port - priority, ID : 233, 2
 Designated port cost : 100
```

Bridge span sub-context commands  
**port (po)** (continued)

---

The following table describes the states that can be shown after the port name.

| <b>State</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                                          |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Forwarding   | Normal state; the port is forwarding packets.                                                               |
| Listening    | When the router is first switched on, it listens for Spanning Tree packets and learns the network topology. |
| Learning     | The router adds entries to the Forwarding table.                                                            |
| Blocking     | The port is blocked by Spanning Tree.                                                                       |
| Disabled     | The port is disabled by the user.                                                                           |

Bridge span sub-context commands

## reset (rst)

---

### Command purpose

The `bridge span reset` command is used to reset the Spanning Tree.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `reset` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge span reset
```

### Using the command

- 1 To reset the Spanning Tree, enter

```
bridge span reset
```

*The router prompts you to select an interface to reset.*

```
Interface to reset <eth1 or isdn2> (all) :
```

- 2 Select an interface to reset by entering `eth1` or `isdn2` or `all`.

*When you have reset the required interface(s), a message similar to the following appears:*

```
Spanning tree reset on eth1 interface.
```

When you reset Spanning Tree, there is a short delay before you can continue using your router; this is because the router has to reconfigure itself.

Bridge span sub-context commands

## status (st)

---

### Command purpose

The `bridge span status` command allows you to display the status of Spanning Tree on your router.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `status` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: bridge span status
```

### Using the command

To display the status of Spanning Tree on your router, enter

```
bridge span status
```

*Information similar to the following appears:*

#### Spanning Tree Status

```
Local unit:
 Address : 0800390087D4
 Priority : 32767
 Forward delay : 15
 Max age : 20
 Hello time : 2
 Root port : 1 (eth1)
 Root path cost : 100
 Group address : 0180C2000000 (default)

Root unit:
 Address : 0800390070D2
 Priority : 95
 Forward delay : 4
 Max age : 21
 Hello time : 4

Topology stable for : 3h 50m 26s
```



---

## IP context shell commands

---

The `ip` context lets you manage IP routing. Commands are grouped into sub-contexts. The following sub-contexts are described in this section:

| IP context | Description                                                                                                      |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| general    | Configure IP parameters that apply, regardless of interface.                                                     |
| eth1       | Configure IP parameters specific to an Ethernet interface.                                                       |
| isdn2      | Configure IP parameters specific to an ISDN interface.                                                           |
| filter     | Configure IP filtering. (These commands are grouped in <code>ip filter</code> sub-context for ease of location.) |

## IP general sub-context commands

The `IP general` sub-context lets you manage those aspects of IP routing that are not interface-dependent.

In the `IP general` sub-context, the command prompt is:

```
HomeOffice: ip general
```

The following commands are described in this section:

| Command    | Shortcut | Description                                                                                               |
|------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| address    | ad       | Set up Internet addressing information for bridging interfaces.                                           |
| arp        | ar       | Display the Address Resolution Protocol table for all bridged interfaces.                                 |
| dhcp       | d        | Configures the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) settings for the router's built-in DHCP server. |
| enabled    | e        | Enable or disable IP on bridged interfaces.                                                               |
| forward    | fo       | Display the Routing table.                                                                                |
| icmp       | i        | Enable or disable Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) for bridging interfaces.                       |
| relay      | re       | Create a table of destinations for packets that will be routed off bridge-only interfaces.                |
| rip        | ri       | Set up the Routing Information Protocol (RIP) for bridging interfaces.                                    |
| route      | ro       | Modify the static Routing Table.                                                                          |
| statistics | ss       | Display IP routing statistics.                                                                            |

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To return to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

---

## IP general sub-context commands

# address (ad)

---

### Command purpose

The `IP general address` command sets up an IP address of your router for interfaces that are used only for bridging.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `address` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general address <parameter>
```

where `<parameter>` is either blank (to set up an address) or `show` (to display the current address).

### Using the command

#### Specifying an IP address for bridging

- 1 To specify an IP address for bridging-only interfaces, enter

```
ip general address
```

*The router prompts you to specify the IP address.*

Modifying the IP address for bridged interfaces  
New IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or  
NONE> (<not assigned>) :

- 2 Enter the IP address.

**Note:** The IP address you enter must be unique and should conform to the addressing scheme used on your own network.

*The router prompts you to specify the subnet mask.*

Subnet mask <No of contiguous bits (8-32),  
b1.b2.b3.b4 or NONE> (none) :

- 3 Enter the subnet mask address.

Unless you are dealing with a complicated network, enter `none` for the subnet mask. Otherwise, consult the administrator for the appropriate network to find out how it is subnetted.

*The router prompts you to specify the broadcast style.*

Broadcast style for host part  
(ONES or ZEROS) (ones):

IP general sub-context commands

**address (ad)** (continued)

---

- 4** Specify the style of broadcasts that your host supports.  
Broadcasts can be made as all ones or all zeros.  
*The router prompts you to specify whether you want broadcasts forwarded onto the LAN.*

Forward broadcasts <ON or OFF> (off) :

- 5** Specify whether you want broadcasts forwarded onto the LAN.  
*When you have finished, the IP address information similar to the following appears.:*

IP Bridge address updated:

```
IP address : 43.000.029.187
Subnet mask : 255.000.000.000
IP : enabled
Broadcast style : ones
Forward broadcasts : on (current = off)
```

**Note:** If you make changes to the Internet address(es), these take effect only after you restart the router.

- 6** To restart the router, enter  
quit

*When you are asked if you want to restart the router, enter yes.*

**Displaying IP addresses on interfaces**

To display the IP addresses for each of the router's interfaces, enter

```
ip general address show
```

---

IP general sub-context commands

## arp (ar)

---

### Command purpose

The router uses the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) to translate Internet addresses into Ethernet addresses. The `IP general arp` command displays the physical interface and all logical addresses on it.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `arp` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general arp
```

### Using the command

To display the address conversion table for logical interface addresses, enter

```
ip general arp
```

*If you have not set an IP address on the Ethernet interface(s), the following message appears:*

```
An IP address has not been assigned to this interface yet.
```

*If you have set an IP address on the Ethernet interface(s), the following information appears:*

```
ARP table for logical interface address 2.002.002.002
```

```
ARP Table
Internet Address Ethernet Address Life
2.002.002.147 080020101E11 10 mins
```

IP general sub-context commands

## dhcp (d)

---

### Command purpose

The `ip general dhcp` command configures the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) settings for the HomeOffice Router's built-in DHCP server. In most cases, your network administrator can provide you with the parameters for the `dhcp` command.

The DHCP server acts with both Multi-User and Single-User DIAT. It allows you to configure your PC to view and access other hosts on the network, and supports the following types of servers:

- Domain Name Servers (DNS)
- Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS)

*Note:* DHCP works in conjunction with DIAT. Therefore, a DIAT circuit must be activated for DHCP to operate. However, if you wish to enable DHCP when your HomeOffice Router has no circuits configured with DIAT, you can still do so. To do this, enable DIAT on a circuit you are not using, for example, the admin circuit.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `dhcp` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice : ip general dhcp
```

### Using the command

- 1 To configure DHCP on the router, enter `ip general dhcp`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
DHCP <ENABLED or DISABLED> (enabled) :
```

- 2 Select `enabled` or `disabled`.

DHCP is enabled by default. It is only effective if the router has at least one circuit configured with DIAT.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Domain Name <up to 43 characters or NONE> (NONE) :
```

---

IP general sub-context commands  
**dhcp (d)** (continued)

---

- 3** Enter the name of the domain of which you want your host to be part. For example, if your network is part of the domain called yourcompany.com, you would enter that value here.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Primary DNS Address <b1.b2.b3.b4, or NONE>
(NONE) : 89.0.12.13
```
- 4** Enter the IP address on the remote network of the primary domain name server you want to use.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Secondary DNS Address <b1.b2.b3.b4, or NONE>
(NONE) : 89.0.12.15
```
- 5** Enter the IP address on the remote network of the secondary domain name server you want to use.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Primary WINS Address <b1.b2.b3.b4, or NONE>
(NONE) : 89.0.15.11
```
- 6** Enter the IP address on the remote network of the primary Windows Internet Naming Service server you want to access.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Secondary WINS Address <b1.b2.b3.b4, or NONE>
(NONE) : 89.0.15.12
```
- 7** Enter the IP address on the remote network of the secondary Windows Internet Naming Service server you want to access.
- When you have entered all the parameters, you see the following:*
- ```
DHCP Parameters updated:
DHCP Network Parameters
DNS Address Primary : 89.0.12.13
DNS Address Secondary : 89.0.12.15
WINS Address Primary : 89.0.15.11
WINS Address Secondary : 89.0.15.12
```

IP general sub-context commands

enabled (e)

Command purpose

The `ip general enabled` command applies to bridging interfaces, and activates or deactivates IP.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `enabled` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general enabled [show]
```

Using the command

Enabling IP

- 1 To enable IP, enter

```
ip general enabled
```

The router prompts you to choose the status.

```
Enable IP on bridged interfaces <YES or NO> (yes) :
```
- 2 Enter `yes` if you want IP to be enabled for bridging interfaces, or `no` if you want it to be disabled.

Note: The change does not take effect until you restart the router.

Displaying IP status

To show the current IP status, enter

```
ip general enabled show
```

The routing interfaces on which IP is enabled, as well as the current bridge IP state appear. The arrow shows you the current interface.

	IP Protocol Table	
Interface	Enabled	Current
134.196.6.4	no	disabled
=> 191.193.77.8	yes	enabled
200.200.7.1	yes	enabled
127.0.0.1	no	disabled

IP general sub-context commands

forward (fo)

Command purpose

The IP general forward command lets you check the information currently stored in the IP forwarding table.

Command syntax

The syntax of the forward command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general forward
```

Using the command

To check the information currently stored in the IP forwarding table, enter

```
ip general forward
```

Information similar to the following appears.:

IP Routing Table

Host or Network	Route Mask	Next Hop Router	Metric	Source
4.000.000.000	255.000.000.000	-	1	direct
40.000.000.000	255.000.000.000	-	1	direct
41.000.000.000	255.000.000.000	-	1	direct
42.000.000.000	255.000.000.000	-	1	direct
192.168.169.000	255.255.255.000	-	1	direct

In addition to entries entered statically using route add, the IP routing table contains information provided by RIP and ICMP. Metric is the RIP metric (hop count).

The Route Mask column shows any subnet masks that have been set up. If you have not set up any subnet masks, this column has an n/a entry.

The Source column also shows any directly connected networks as direct.

icmp (i)

Command purpose

The IP `general icmp` command lets you define what the router does with Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) redirect messages on this interface. ICMP provides information about why IP packets fail to get to their destinations. In the IP `general` context, the `icmp` command applies only to interfaces used for bridging, where it changes the current values.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `icmp` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general icmp [show]
```

Using the command

Managing ICMP on interfaces used for bridging

- 1 To manage ICMP on interfaces used for bridging, enter

```
ip general icmp
```

The router prompts you to specify if ICMP redirects should be transmitted on bridged interfaces.

```
Transmit ICMP redirects on bridged  
interfaces <ON or OFF> (on):
```
 - 2 If you want to stop the router from sending ICMP redirects on a WAN interface to save bandwidth, enter `off`.
Note: This should not be necessary on a LAN interface. Otherwise enter `on`.
The router prompts you to specify if ICMP redirects on bridged interfaces are monitored.
- ```
Listen for ICMP redirects on bridged
interfaces <ON or OFF> (off):
```
- To listen for ICMP redirects means the router monitors incoming ICMP redirects and uses information provided by ICMP to update its Routing table.

---

 IP general sub-context commands  
**icmp (i)** (continued)
 

---

- 3** Specify whether ICMP redirects on bridged interfaces are monitored by entering `on` or `off`.

If you select `off`, the router ignores incoming ICMP redirects and does not use information provided by ICMP to update its Routing table.

**Note:** If you are running RIP (see the `rip` command), the router automatically ignores ICMP redirects.

*If you change the ICMP parameters, information similar to the following appears:*

```
ICMP redirects not updated:
 Interface : bridge
 Transmit ICMP redirects : on
 Listen ICMP redirects : off
```

### Displaying current ICMP redirects

To display current ICMP redirects, enter

```
ip general icmp show
```

*Information similar to the following appears:*

```
ICMP Redirects
 Interface Transmit Listen
 192.168.169.168 off off
 40.000.000.001 off off
 41.000.000.001 off off
 42.000.000.001 off off
=> 4.005.008.009 on off
```

IP general sub-context commands

## relay (re)

---

### Command purpose

The IP `general relay` command creates a table of destinations for broadcasts that are routed to remote destinations from bridge-only interfaces.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `relay` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general relay <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, `enable`, or `show`.

### Using the command

#### Adding destinations

1 To add a destination, enter

```
ip general relay add
```

*The router prompts you to enter the IP address.*

```
IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4> :
```

2 Enter either

- the IP address of the NetBIOS or BootP server from which you want to receive broadcasts, or
- the broadcast address of the network on which the server is located

**Note:** You would be most likely to use the broadcast address if there are several servers on one network.

*The router prompts you to specify if UDP broadcasts are to be forwarded.*

```
Forward all UDP broadcasts <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

---

 IP general sub-context commands  
**relay (re)** (continued)
 

---

- 3 Do the following:

| If you want to                                                   | Then               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| forward all types of UDP broadcasts, including NetBIOS and BootP | enter <i>on</i> .  |
| forward NetBIOS or BootP packets                                 | enter <i>off</i> . |

*If you enter *off*, the router prompts for the following:*

Forward NetBIOS packets <ON or OFF> (*off*) :  
 Forward BOOTP/DHCP packets <ON or OFF> (*off*) :

- 4 Enable forwarding of NetBIOS or BootP packets, as required.

*The details of the relay address that you added appear:*

Relay address added:

```

Address : 85.0.0.2
Forward all UDP broadcasts : off
Forward NetBIOS packets : on
Forward BOOTP/DHCP packets : off

```

**Note:** The maximum number of entries in the Relay Forwarding Table is 16 per interface.

### Changing the details of relay addresses

- 1 To edit the details of an existing relay address, enter

```
ip general relay change
```

*The router prompts you to specify the relay address to change.*

```
Relay address <IP address or *> :
```

- 2 Enter the IP address to change.

*The router prompts for the new IP address.*

```
New IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4> (85.0.0.2):
```

- 3 Enter the new IP address.

*The router prompts you to specify if UDP broadcasts are to be forwarded.*

```
Forward all UDP broadcasts <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

IP general sub-context commands  
**relay (re)** (continued)

---

4 Do the following:

| If you want to                                                   | Then                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| forward all types of UDP broadcasts, including NetBIOS and BootP | enter <code>on</code> .  |
| forward NetBIOS or BootP packets                                 | enter <code>off</code> . |

*If you enter `off`, the router prompts for the following:*

```
Forward NetBIOS packets <ON or OFF> (off) :
Forward BOOTP/DHCP packets <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

5 Enable forwarding of NetBIOS or BootP packets, as required.

*The details of the relay address that you added appear.*

Relay address added:

```
Address : 85.0.0.2
Forward all UDP broadcasts : off
Forward NetBIOS packets : on
Forward BOOTP/DHCP packets : off
```

**Note:** The maximum number of entries in the Relay Forwarding Table is 16 per interface.

**Deleting relay addresses**

1 To delete a relay address, enter

```
ip general relay delete
```

*The router prompts you to specify the relay address to delete.*

```
Relay address <IP address or *> : *
```

2 Enter the address that you want to delete.

*Details of the address appear:*

Relay address to delete:

```
Address : 2.002.002.002
Forward all UDP broadcasts : off
Forward NetBIOS packets : off
Forward BOOTP/DHCP packets : off
```

3 When you are asked to confirm the deletion, enter `yes` to delete or `no` to cancel.

---

## IP general sub-context commands

### relay (re) (continued)

---

#### Enabling relay addresses

The `enable` parameter determines whether or not IP relay addresses are used. If you disable IP relay addresses, any relay addresses that you set using the `add` parameter are not used.

- 1 To enable or disable IP relay addresses, enter

```
ip general relay enable
```

*The following prompt appears:*

```
Use IP relay addresses <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

- 2 Enter `on` to enable or `off` to disable IP relay addresses.

**Note:** You must restart the router for this change to take effect.

#### Displaying relay address details

The `show` parameter displays details of the IP Relay Addresses to which packets are routed from bridge-only interfaces.

To display details of IP Relay Addresses, enter

```
ip general relay show
```

*Information similar to the following appears:*

|                | IP Relay Addresses |
|----------------|--------------------|
| IP Address     | Protocols          |
| 88.000.000.001 | All UDP broadcasts |
| 88.000.000.002 | NetBIOS            |

IP general sub-context commands

## rip (ri)

---

### Command purpose

The IP general `rip` command enables and disables the Routing Information Protocol (RIP), which is the dynamic routing protocol used on TCP/IP networks. This command lets you enable and disable RIP for IP on interfaces used only for bridging.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `rip` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general rip [show]
```

### Using the command

#### Enabling RIP

- 1 To enable or disable RIP, enter

```
ip general rip
```

*The router prompts for the following information:*

```
RIP on bridged interfaces <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

- 2 Enter `on` to activate RIP.

*The following appears:*

```
Interface cost <1 -15 or INFINITY> (1) :
```

The Interface Cost is the notional cost of using RIP with IP. If there are several routes to a destination, the router chooses the one with the lowest interface cost.

- 3 Enter a value between 1 and 15 or *infinity*.

| If                                                        | Then                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| an interface gives access to a particularly expensive WAN | you may want to set the parameter quite high. |
| you want to force traffic to use a particular route       | set the value quite low.                      |

---

IP general sub-context commands  
**rip (ri)** (continued)

---

*The following appears:*

Triggered Retry Count <5 - 100 or INFINITY> (5) :

- 4** Define the number of times that RIP tries to connect with RIP on the destination router, if they cannot communicate (for example, due to incorrect configuration).

*The following appears:*

Triggered Retry Interval in minutes <1 - 10> (1)

- 5** Define the time interval between triggered retry attempts.

*The following appears:*

Include default routes in RIP packets <YES or NO> (yes) :

- 6** Respond as required.

*The following appears:*

Ignore incoming RIP updates <YES or NO> (no) :

- 7** Respond as required.

*The following display appears.*

```
Routing Information Protocol updated:
 Interface : bridge
 RIP : off
 Cost : 1
 Triggered Retry Count : 5
 Triggered Retry Interval : 1
 Include default routes : yes
 Ignore RIP Updates : no
```

IP general sub-context commands  
**rip (ri)** (continued)

---

**Displaying RIP status**

To display the status of RIP on all of the router's interfaces, enter `ip general rip show`.

You see:

| Routing Information Protocol |     |          |                |                   |                           |      |
|------------------------------|-----|----------|----------------|-------------------|---------------------------|------|
| Interface                    | RIP | Cost     | Retry<br>Count | Retry<br>Interval | Include<br>Default Routes | Warn |
| 168.169.168                  | off | 1        | 5              | 1                 | yes                       | -    |
| 41.000.000.001               | off | 1        | 5              | 1                 | yes                       | -    |
| 42.000.000.001               | off | 1        | 5              | 1                 | yes                       | -    |
| =>5.008.009                  | off | infinity | -              | -                 | -                         | -    |

**Note:** The arrow points to the current interface.

---

IP general sub-context commands

## route (ro)

---

### Command purpose

The `IP general route` command configures the static entries in the Routing table. Statically entered routing addresses are stored permanently in the router's Routing table and define the routes by which the router reaches remote networks. `Route` lets you enter this information explicitly. The Routing table also contains information provided by RIP and ICMP.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `route` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general route <action>
```

where <action> is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, `learn`, or `show`.

### Using the command

#### Adding routes

You can add up to three routes to the same destination network. You cannot start adding routes until you have assigned the necessary Internet addresses to the router.

- 1 To add a static route to the routing table, enter the following and press <Enter>.

```
ip general route add
```

*You see:*

```
Remote network or host <Internet address
or DEFAULT >:
```

- 2 Enter the address of the final destination network or host.

This must not be a network to which the router is directly connected. If you enter `*`, the router lists possible networks and hosts from the IP Name Table.

*The router prompts you to enter the next hop router Internet address.*

```
Next hop router <Internet address,
Interface name > :
```

IP general sub-context commands

**route (ro)** (continued)

---

- 3** Enter the address of the first router down the line towards that network.  
This router must be on a network to which the router is directly connected.  
*The router prompts you to enter the number of hops to the destination network.*  
RIP metric <1 - 15> (2) :
- 4** Enter the metric, that is, the number of hops it takes to reach the destination network.  
Packets are sent over the route with the lowest metric. You can enter an artificially high or low metric to force the router to use (or not use) a particular route. The default is 2.

**Changing routes**

To change a static entry in the Routing table, enter `ip general route change` followed by the Internet address of the remote network or host.

If you are not sure exactly which entries are stored in the Routing table, enter `route change *` to list the possible Internet addresses.

The prompts are the same as for `route add`. Enter a new value or press <Enter> to leave a value unchanged. If there is more than one entry for the host or network you specify, each entry appears in turn.

**Deleting routes**

To delete an entry in the Routing table, enter `ip general route delete` followed by the entry's Internet address.

The router displays the entry and does not delete it until you respond `yes` to the prompt.

If you are not sure exactly what is in the Routing table, enter `route delete *` to list the possible Internet addresses.

## IP general sub-context commands

### **route (ro)** (continued)

---

#### **Storing dynamically entered routes as static routes**

Use `ip general route learn` if you have entered routes in the Routing table manually, that is, dynamically, and want to store them for future use. The router looks for individual dynamic entries and asks you to confirm that you want them to be stored as static entries.

#### **Displaying routes**

To display static routing entries, enter `ip general route show`.

When you press <Enter>, you see:

IP Routing Table

| Host or Network | Route Mask      | Next Hop      | Router | Metric | Cost | Warn |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|--------|--------|------|------|
| 1.001.001.001   | 255.255.255.255 | 2.000.676.001 |        | 2      | 1    | -    |

**Note:** The Route Mask column shows any subnet masks that have been set up. If you have not set up any subnet masks, this column has an n/a entry.

Alternatively, use the `forward` command to display the entire Routing table.

## IP general sub-context commands

**statistics (ss)**

---

**Command purpose**

The IP general statistics command displays information on the IP routing carried out by the router. Error and dropped datagram totals should remain low. If they rise suddenly, this indicates a problem with your network.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the statistics command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip general statistics
```

**Using the command**

To display IP routing statistics, enter IP general statistics.

The display looks like this:

```
Total datagrams received : 186450
 For applications : 90915 (48.76%)
 For forwarding : 18378 (9.85%)
 Dropped datagrams :
 Header error : 4 (0.00%)
 Address error : 0 (0.00%)
 Unknown protocol : 0 (0.00%)
 Other Reason : 0 (0.00%)

Total datagrams sent : 51021
 From applications : 32643 (63.97%)
 Dropped datagrams :
 Lack of route : 22035 (43.18%)
 Other Reason : 0 (0.00%)

Datagrams fragmentated : 0 (0.00%) Fragments : 0
 Unable to fragment : 0 (0.00%)

Fragments received : 0 (0.00%) Datagrams: 0
 Unable to re-assemble: 0 (0.00%)
```

## IP interface sub-context commands

The HomeOffice Router has a sub-context for each of its physical interfaces. The commands in these sub-contexts let you configure the specific interface to route IP.

In the IP <interface> sub-context, the command prompts are:

```
HomeOffice: ip eth1
```

```
HomeOffice: ip isdn2
```

for the Ethernet and ISDN interfaces respectively.

The following commands are described in this section:

| Command     | Shortcut | Interface     | Description                                                                     |
|-------------|----------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| address     | ad       | eth1<br>isdn2 | Allocates an interface's Internet address.                                      |
| arp         | ar       | eth1          | Displays the address conversion table.                                          |
| association | as       | isdn2         | Relates an IP address to a circuit using the circuit name.                      |
| circuit     | ci       | isdn2         | Relates a circuit to an IP address using the circuit name.                      |
| diat        | d        | eth1<br>isdn2 | Configures Dynamic IP Address Translation (DIAT) on the ISDN interface.         |
| enabled     | e        | eth1<br>isdn2 | Enables or disables IP routing on this interface.                               |
| icmp        | i        | eth1<br>isdn2 | Enables or disables Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) on this interface. |
| lookup      | l        | isdn2         | Displays the last 20 lookup failures in the Association table.                  |
| —continued— |          |               |                                                                                 |

| Command | Shortcut | Interface     | Description                                                                                                                                    |
|---------|----------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| relay   | re       | eth1          | Creates a table of destinations for packets that will be routed off the Ethernet to remote destinations.                                       |
| rip     | ri       | eth1<br>isdn2 | Enables or disables Routing Information Protocol (RIP) on this interface.                                                                      |
| spoof   | sp       | eth1          | Enables or disables spoofing of certain data packets that are sent periodically by a LAN host to determine if other hosts are still connected. |
| —end—   |          |               |                                                                                                                                                |

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To exit back to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

The `arp` and `relay` commands are only available in Ethernet sub-contexts. The `association`, `circuit`, and `lookup` commands are available only in ISDN sub-contexts.

**Note:** Commands relating to filtering are grouped together in the `ip filter` sub-context.

---

## IP interface sub-context commands

# address (ad)

---

### Command purpose

The `ip <interface> address` command is available in all contexts, and sets up Internet addresses for the Ethernet or ISDN interface. You can assign more than one Internet address to each interface by using IP Multihoming. This allows the router to run more than one logical network out of the same physical network.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `address` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip <interface> address <action>
```

where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`, and `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, or `show`.

### Using the command

#### `ip <interface> address`

When you type `address`, the following prompt appears:

```
Interface IP Addresses <ADD, CHANGE, DELETE
or SHOW> :
```

#### Adding an IP address for the interface

- 1 To add a logical IP address, enter `add`.

*The router prompts you for the new address. The IP address you enter must be unique and should conform to the addressing scheme used on your own network.*

```
New IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or NONE>
<not assigned>) :
```

- 2 Enter the address or enter `none`.

*The router prompts you for the subnet mask address.*

```
Subnet mask <No of contiguous bits (8-32),
b1.b2.b3.b4 or NONE> (none) :
```

IP interface sub-context commands

**address (ad)** (continued)

---

- 3** Unless you are dealing with a complicated network, enter `none` for the subnet mask. Otherwise, consult the Administrator for the appropriate network to find out how it is subnetted. The final three prompts only appear for the LAN interface:

Broadcast style for host part (ONES or ZEROS) (ones):

- 4** Select the broadcast style supported by your hosts.

Broadcasts can be made as all ones or all zeros.

*The following prompt appears:*

Forward broadcasts <OFF or ON> (off):

- 5** Specify whether you want broadcasts forwarded onto the LAN.

*When you have completed the configuration, the details of the new IP addresses appear:*

eth1 IP address updated:

```
IP address : 11.001.001.000 (current = <not assigned>)
Subnet mask : 255.000.000.000 (current = <not assigned>)
IP : enabled (current = disabled)
Broadcast style : ones
Forward broadcasts: off
This change will take effect the next time the unit is
"software started" using "top boot".
```

**Note:** Any change to the Internet address(es) takes effect only after you restart the router. When you have finished setting the addresses, enter quit. When you are asked if you want to restart the router, type yes.

**Deleting IP addresses**

The `ip <interface> address delete` command allows you to delete a selected IP address. You are prompted to confirm or cancel the deletion.

```
Delete IP Address <YES or NO> :y
```

The deletion takes effect the next time the unit software is restarted using `top boot`.

---

 IP interface sub-context commands  
**address (ad)** (continued)
 

---

**Displaying IP address information for the interface**

The `ip <interface> address show` command displays only the IP address information for the sub-context you are currently in. For example:

```

IP Address Table
Interface IP Address Subnet Mask State Broadcast Running
 Style Status
=> eth1 70.1.1.0 255.0.0.0 enabled ones active
 10.1.1.0 255.0.0.0 enabled ones active
 11.1.1.0 255.0.0.0 enabled ones active

```

The `Running Status` column shows the status of each logical interface within a physical interface. Possible entries can be:

| Status  | Description                                                                                                         |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| active  | This logical interface is currently running and active.                                                             |
| restart | You must restart the router before this interface becomes active. (This normally applies to a newly added address.) |
| deleted | You have deleted this address. However, it will continue to run until you restart the router.                       |

**Displaying all IP addresses**

The `ip <interface> address show all` command displays the router's Internet addresses for all interfaces.

IP interface sub-context commands

## arp (ar)

---

### Command purpose

The router uses the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) to translate Internet addresses into Ethernet addresses. The `ip eth1 arp` command applies to a physical interface and all logical addresses on it.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `arp` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip eth1 arp
```

### Using the command

#### Activating ARP on the interface

If you have not set an IP address on the Ethernet interface(s), you see the following warning message when you type `arp` at the above prompt.

An IP address has not been assigned to this interface yet.

Use the `arp` command to display the address conversion table for logical interface addresses.

The display looks similar to the following:

```
ARP table for logical interface address 2.002.002.002
```

```
ARP Table
Internet Address Ethernet Address Life
 2.002.002.147 080020101E11 10 mins
 2.002.002.060 08004E03505F 7 mins
```

```
ARP table for logical interface address 3.003.003.003
```

```
ARP Table
Internet Address Ethernet Address Life
 3.003.003.126 0000C08C3253 7 mins
 3.003.003.214 00006B812908 1 mins
 3.003.003.242 080039005B7D 3 mins
```

IP interface sub-context commands  
**arp (ar)** (continued)

---

The following table describes the fields.

| <b>Field</b>     | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Internet address | This is the IP address that was assigned to the router.                                                                                               |
| Ethernet Address | This is the router's MAC address.                                                                                                                     |
| Life             | This is the length of time in which the entry will remain in the ARP table before being removed by the HomeOffice Router. The default is ten minutes. |

IP interface sub-context commands

## association (as)

---

### Command purpose

The `ip isdn2 association` command lets you relate an IP address to a circuit by using its circuit name.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `association` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip isdn2 association <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, or `show`.

### Using the command

#### Adding an association

- 1 To create a new association for this interface, enter

```
ip isdn2 association add
```

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Internet address <4bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or unnumbered,
name or *>:
```

- 2 Enter the IP address of the destination you want to reach.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit Name <Up to 15 Characters or *>:
```

- 3 Specify the circuit to be used.

The circuit must be accessible from this interface.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
IP <ENABLED or DISABLED> (enabled) :
```

- 4 Enable the interface.

**Note:** You can also use the `association` command to disable IP routing on this circuit.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
RIP Mode <STANDARD, TRIGGERED, DELTA,
or OFF> (off) :
```

---

 IP interface sub-context commands  
**association (as)** (continued)
 

---

- 5 Select the RIP mode you require for this association.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
RIP Version <1, 2 or COMPATIBLE> (1) :
```

**Note:** This prompt appears only if RIP is turned on.

- 6 Enter the version of RIP that you are using.

The default value is `compatible`. If you choose version 2, this means that the entire route, including the subnet mask, appears in the RIP packet. You should choose `compatible` if there are parts of your network that do not support RIP V2.

*You have now created a new association for this interface.*

### **Adding an association: an alternate method**

Alternatively, you can enter the entire association on the command line as follows:

```
ip isdn2 association add 90.008.004.005
manufacturing enabled
```

**Note:** The entire command is entered on one line.

When you press <Enter>, you see

```
IP association added:
```

```
Internet address : 90.008.004.005
Network : 90.000.000.000
Circuit name : manufacturing
IP : enabled
RIP mode : off
RIP version : compatible
```

### **Changing an association for an interface**

To change an association for an interface, enter `ip isdn2 association change`.

See “Adding an association” for descriptions of prompts.

IP interface sub-context commands

**association (as)** (continued)

---

**Deleting an association**

To delete an existing association, enter `ip isdn2 association delete`.

The router prompts for the circuit name of the association you want to delete and then displays the entry.

```
Circuit Name <Up to 15 Characters or *> : energis

 Internet address : unnumbered
 Network : <not assigned>
 Circuit name : Energis
 IP : enabled
 RIP mode : standard
 RIP version : compatible
```

```
Delete IP association <YES or NO> : no
```

The router does not delete the entry until you confirm that you want to do so.

**Displaying the association table**

To display the association table for an interface, enter `ip isdn2 association show`.

The following display appears:

```
IP Association Table
Node Address Circuit Name IP RIP mode Version Warn
57.008.004.005 manufacturing enabled standard 1 6
```

For more detailed information about a particular entry, including warnings, enter the IP address on the command line:

```
ip isdn2 association show 88.0.0.2
```

IP interface sub-context commands  
**association (as)** (continued)

---

When you press <Enter>, you see

```
Internet address : 90.008.004.005
 Network : 90.000.000.000
 Circuit name : manufacturing
 IP : enabled
 RIP mode : active
 RIP version : 1
```

```
WARNING 6 : Interface is disabled
```

```
WARNING 13 : Circuit is disabled
```

## **circuit (ci)**

---

### **Command purpose**

The `ip isdn2 circuit` command is available on the ISDN interface. It lets you relate a circuit and an IP address using the circuit name.

*Note:* The circuit command and the association table are different ways of accessing the same information.

### **Command syntax**

The syntax of the `circuit` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip isdn2 circuit [show]
```

### **Using the command**

#### **Associating a circuit**

- 1 To relate a circuit and an IP address, enter  
`ip isdn2 circuit`  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
Circuit Name <Up to 15 Characters or \*> :
- 2 Enter the name of the circuit and press <Enter>.  
*The router prompts you for an IP address.*  
Internet address <b1.b2.b3.b4 or unnumbered >:  
This is the IP address to which you are linking the circuit.
- 3 Enter it and press <Enter>.  
*You see the following prompt:*  
IP <ENABLED or DISABLED> (enabled) : disabled
- 4 Define if IP is to be enabled on this circuit and press <Enter>.  
*You see the following prompt:*  
RIP Mode <STANDARD, TRIGGERED, DELTA, or OFF> (off)  
:
- 5 Define which RIP mode you require on this circuit and press <Enter>.  
*The new association, with all of its attributes appears:*

---

**IP interface sub-context commands**  
**circuit (ci) (continued)**


---

IP association updated:

```

Circuit name : admin1
Network : 90.000.000.02
Internet address : 90.000.000.01
IP : disabled
RIP mode : off
RIP version : compatible

```

### Displaying the circuit table

To display the IP Circuit Table, enter `ip isdn2 circuit show` and press <Enter>.

The display appears as follows:

IP Association Table

| Circuit Name  | Node Address   | IP       | RIP Mode  | Warning |
|---------------|----------------|----------|-----------|---------|
| admin1        | 90.000.000.02  | disabled | off       | -       |
| manufacturing | 88.000.000.002 | enabled  | triggered | -       |
| personnel     | 88.000.000.003 | enabled  | off       | -       |

To display a particular entry in more detail, including warnings, enter the circuit name on the command line and press <Enter>.

```
ip isdn2 circuit show admin1
```

The following appears:

```

Circuit name : admin1 Network : 90.000.000.01
Internet address : unnumbered IP : enabled
RIP mode : off
RIP version : compatible

```

IP interface sub-context commands

## diat (d)

---

### Command purpose

The `ip <interface> diat` command is available on the ISDN and Ethernet interfaces. It configures Dynamic IP Address Translation (DIAT) for single-host or multi-host use on a specified circuit. On the ISDN interface, it also enables and disables Dynamic IP Address Translation.

**Note:** The HomeOffice Router must be using unnumbered links when configured to use DIAT.

DIAT is enabled by default.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `diat` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip eth1 diat
```

```
HomeOffice: ip isdn2 diat
```

### Using the command

#### Configuring DIAT on an ISDN interface

- 1 To configure DIAT on an ISDN circuit, enter the following and press <Enter>.

```
ip isdn2 diat
```

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Circuit name <up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

- 2 Type the name of the circuit for which you want to change the DIAT parameters.

**Note:** The change does not take effect until you restart the router.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
DIAT mode <DISABLED, SINGLEHOST or
MULTIHOST> (multihost) :
```

Your response lets your router know whether you have one or more devices on your LAN.

---

 IP interface sub-context commands  
**diat (d)** (continued)
 

---

- 3** Select SINGLEHOST if you are connecting one device (for example, a PC) to your LAN.  
 Select MULTIIHOST if you are connecting more than one device.  
*When you have made your selection, the changed configuration appears.*
- Circuit updated:
- ```
Circuit Name      : default
DIAT Mode        : singlehost
```

Configuring DIAT on an Ethernet interface

The HomeOffice Router supports a local Service Host Table that allows applications and users to connect to services (for example, WEB and mail services) on the router's LAN. The HomeOffice Router can be configured with a table of local services and the local address of the device supporting these services. For example, when a WEB request is sent to the LAN, the router can forward this request to the correct device on the LAN. This allows local services to be exported without the remote site having to know the local IP address.

- 1** To configure DIAT on an Ethernet interface, enter the following and press <Enter>.
- ```
ip eth1 diat
```
- The router responds as follows:*
- ```
Service port number <1 - 65535 or
DEFAULT> (default) :
```
- 2** Type the TCP Port number of the service you want to select.
- The router responds as follows:*
- ```
New IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or
NONE> (40.004.004.004) :
```

IP interface sub-context commands  
**diat (d)** (continued)

---

- 3 Type the destination IP address to which you want to direct these service requests.
- This updates the DIAT Service Host Table. Information similar to the following appears:*
- ```
DIAT Service Host Table updated:  
  
Service port number : 23  
Host IP Address      : 70.004.004.004
```

IP interface sub-context commands

enabled (e)**Command purpose**

The `ip <interface> enabled` command is available on all interfaces. It lets you enable and disable IP routing on each logical interface, and works identically on each interface.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `enabled` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip eth1 enabled [show]
```

```
HomeOffice: ip isdn2 enabled [show]
```

Using the command**Enabling IP on an interface**

- 1 To enable IP routing, type the following and press <Enter>.

```
ip <interface> enabled
```

The router responds as follows:

```
Enable IP on interface <YES or NO> (yes) :
```

- 2 Enter `yes` if you want IP to be enabled on this interface, or `no` if you want to disable it.

The change does not take effect until you restart the router.

Note: You cannot enable IP on an interface if the interface does not have an IP address. If you have not already set an IP address on an interface, you see the following warning when you try to use this command:

```
An IP address has not been assigned to this  
interface yet.
```

The router prompts you to select which IP address you want to enable.

```
Logical IP Interface Address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4  
or *> ( 70.001.001.000) :
```

Enter an asterisk (*) to list all the remote addresses on the physical interface that you are changing.

IP interface sub-context commands

enabled (e) (continued)

Displaying IP addresses for interfaces

This displays a table showing information for the logical IP interface addresses for all interfaces. For example, if you enter

```
ip eth1 enabled show
```

the following display appears:

IP Protocol Table

Interface	Enabled	Current
70.001.001.000	yes	enabled
10.001.001.000	yes	enabled
11.001.001.000	yes	disabled
20.001.001.000	yes	enabled
22.001.001.000	yes	enabled
24.001.001.000	yes	enabled
23.001.001.000	yes	enabled
127.000.000.001	yes	enabled
89.000.003.203	yes	enabled

IP interface sub-context commands

icmp (i)

Command purpose

The `ip <interface> icmp` command is available on all interfaces and works identically on each of them. This command lets you define what the router does with Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) redirect messages on each logical interface.

ICMP provides information about why IP packets fail to get to their destinations.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `icmp` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip eth1 icmp [show]
```

```
HomeOffice: ip isdn2 icmp [show]
```

Using the command

Defining how ICMP redirect messages are handled

To define how ICMP redirect messages are handled by the HomeOffice Router, enter `ip <interface> icmp`.

If an IP address has been assigned to this interface, you see the following prompt:

```
Transmit ICMP redirects <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

You may want to stop the router from sending ICMP redirects on a WAN interface to save bandwidth. This should not be necessary on a LAN interface.

```
Listen for ICMP redirects <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

If you select `off`, the router ignores incoming ICMP redirects and does not use information provided by ICMP to update its Routing table. If you are running RIP (see the `rip` command on page 5-47), the router automatically ignores ICMP redirects.

IP interface sub-context commands

icmp (i) (continued)

When you have changed the ICMP parameters, you see

ICMP redirects updated:

```
Interface                : eth1
Transmit ICMP redirects  : yes
Listen ICMP redirects    : no
```

Note: If you have not already set an IP address on an interface, you see the following warning when you try to use this command.

```
An IP address has not been assigned to this
interface yet.
```

Displaying ICMP settings

To display the current settings for ICMP on each logical interface, enter `ip <interface> icmp show`.

A display similar to the following appears:

```
ip eth1 icmp show

Interface                ICMP Redirects
                        Transmit      Listen
=>89.100.100.100         on          off
=>11.001.001.000         on          off
ip eth1
```

 IP interface sub-context commands

lookup (I)

Command purpose

The `ip isdn2 lookup` command displays the last 20 lookup failures recorded in the association table. This information is useful if you are having trouble communicating with a particular destination.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `lookup` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip isdn2 lookup
```

Using the command

To display lookup failures, enter `ip isdn2 lookup`.

A display similar to the following appears:

```
IP Association Lookup Failures
```

```
Next hop router  Circuit  Fails  Last fail  Reason
-                5       7d 0h    Circuit not defined
router.91        paris    10      1d 12h    IP disabled on circuit
router.43        berlin   1       10m 1s    Circuit disabled
```

Parameter	Description
Fails	Tells you how many association lookups have failed for this circuit.
Last fail	Tells you how long ago the last failure occurred.

IP interface sub-context commands

relay (re)

Command purpose

The `ip eth1 relay` command is used to create a table of destinations for broadcasts that are routed off that network to remote destinations.

Note: The `relay` command applies to all logical IP addresses on a physical Ethernet interface. However, the address you choose is the IP address of the physical interface, not the IP address of one of the logical interfaces on that physical interface.

Command syntax

The syntax of the command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip eth1 relay <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, `enable`, or `show`.

Using the command

Note: If you have not already set an IP address on an interface, you see the following warning when you try to use this command.

```
An IP address has not been assigned to this  
interface yet.
```

```
IP relay address table <ADD, CHANGE, DELETE, SHOW  
or ENABLE> :
```

Enter the `enable` command if you want to use the IP addresses of NetBIOS or BootP devices. You see the following prompt:

```
Use IP relay addresses <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

This change will take effect the next time the unit is restarted using `top boot`.

 IP interface sub-context commands
relay (re) (continued)

Creating a table of destinations

- 1 To create a table of destinations on an interface, type the following and press <Enter>:

```
ip eth1 relay add
```

The router responds as follows:

```
IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4> :
```

- 2 Enter the IP address of the NetBIOS or BootP/DHCP server on which you want to receive broadcasts, or the broadcast address of the network on which the server is located.

You would most likely use the broadcast address if there are several servers on one network.

The router responds as follows:

```
Forward all UDP broadcasts <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

- 3 Do the following:

If you want to	Then
forward all types of UDP broadcasts, including NetBIOS and BootP/DHCP	type <code>on</code> . Note: Configuring <code>Forward all UDP broadcasts</code> to <code>ON</code> may keep your WAN links open unnecessarily.
forward only NetBIOS and/or BootP/DHCP packets	type <code>off</code> . <i>The router prompts you for the following:</i> <code>Forward NetBIOS packets <ON or OFF> (off) :</code> <code>Forward BOOTP/DHCP packets <ON or OFF> (off) :</code> Enable forwarding of NetBIOS and/or BOOTP/DHCP packets, as required.

IP interface sub-context commands

relay (re) (continued)

The router then confirms the details of the relay address that you added.

Relay address added:

```
Address                : 85.0.0.2
  Forward all UDP broadcasts : off
  Forward NetBIOS packets   : on
  Forward BOOTP/DHCP packets : on
```

Note: The maximum number of entries in the Relay Forwarding Table is 16 per interface.

Changing destination details

The `ip eth1 relay change` command allows you to change the details of an existing relay address.

Relay address <IP address or *> :

Enter the address that you want to change. The prompts are then the same as for `relay add`.

Deleting destinations

The `ip eth1 relay delete` allows you to delete relay addresses.

Enter the address that you want to delete. The router displays details of the address and asks you for confirmation before deleting it.

Delete relay address <YES or NO> :

Displaying relay address details

This command displays details of the IP Relay Addresses to which packets are routed from bridge-only interfaces.

IP Relay Addresses

```
IP Address                Protocols
7.007.007.007             NetBIOS, BOOTP/DHCP
88.000.000.002            NetBIOS
```

IP interface sub-context commands

rip (ri)**Command purpose**

The `ip <interface> rip` command allows you to enable and disable Routing Information Protocol (RIP) use on each logical interface. RIP is the dynamic routing protocol used on TCP/IP networks. For instance, you may decide not to run RIP on a WAN interface, to reduce WAN costs. However, you will probably want to keep RIP running on the LAN interface(s).

This command is available on all interfaces, and operates identically on each of them.

Command syntax

The syntax of the command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip eth1 rip
```

```
HomeOffice: ip isdn2 rip
```

Using the command**Enabling RIP on an interface**

- 1 To enable RIP on an interface, type the following and press <Enter>:

```
ip <interface> rip
```

If you have not already set an IP address on an interface, you see the following warning when you try to use this command.

```
An IP address has not been assigned to this  
interface yet.
```

Use the address command to allocate an IP address to an interface.

The router responds as follows:

```
RIP <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

- 2 To enable RIP, type on.

The router responds as follows:

```
Interface cost <1 -15 or INFINITY> (1) :
```

IP interface sub-context commands

rip (ri) (continued)

The Interface Cost is the notional cost of using this interface. If there are several routes to a destination, the router chooses the one with the lowest interface cost.

- 3** Enter a value between 1 and 15, or enter *infinity*.

If	Then
an interface gives access to a particularly expensive WAN	you may want to set the parameter quite high.
you want to force traffic to use a particular route	set the value quite low.

The router responds with the following (on an ISDN interface only):

Triggered Retry Count <0 - 99 or INFINITY> (5) :

- 4** Define the number of times that RIP tries to connect with RIP on the destination router, if they cannot communicate (for example, if communications fail).

The router responds with the following (on an ISDN interface only):

Triggered Retry Interval in minutes <1 - 10> (1) :

- 5** Define the time interval between triggered retry attempts.

The router responds as follows:

Include default routes in RIP packets
<YES or NO> (yes):

- 6** Include default routes in RIP packets, if required.

These are the routes defined using the `ip general route` command (see page 5-19).

The router responds as follows:

Ignore incoming RIP updates <YES or NO> (yes) :

Other network devices may send out RIP packets to exchange routing and service information. These packets can saturate the router's routing table.

 IP interface sub-context commands
rip (ri) (continued)

- 7** Respond with `yes` or `no` as required.
- If you choose to ignore these packets, you should set up a default or static route from the router using the `ip general route add` command.

The router responds with the following (on an Ethernet interface only):

```
RIP Version <1, 2 or COMPATIBLE> (compatible) :
```

- 8** Enter the version of RIP that you are using.

The default value is `compatible`. If you choose version 2, this means that the entire route, including the subnet mask, appears in the RIP packet.

You should choose `compatible` if there are parts of your network that do not support RIP V2.

Details of the new RIP settings appear. The screen will look something like this:

```
Routing Information Protocol updated:
```

```

Interface                : isdn2
RIP                      : on (current = off)
Cost                     : 1
Triggered Retry Count    : 5
Triggered Retry Interval : 2 (current=1)
Include default routes   : yes
Ignore RIP Updates       : no

```

This change will take effect the next time the unit is "software restarted" using `top boot`.

Displaying RIP status

To display RIP status, enter `ip isdn2 rip show`.

This command displays the status of RIP on all of the router's interfaces similar to the following, with the arrow pointing to the current interface.

IP interface sub-context commands
rip (ri) (continued)

Routing Information Protocol

Interface	RIP	Cost	Retry Count	Retry Interval	Include Default Routes	Warn
=>89.100.100.100	on	1	-	-	yes	-
9.039.049.000	off	1	1	5	yes	-

 IP interface sub-context commands

spoof (sp)

Command purpose

The `ip eth1 spoof` command allows you to enable and disable spoofing of certain protocol data packets that are sent periodically by a LAN host to determine whether other parties are still connected. Without spoofing, these data packets would be rerouted over ISDN, incurring extra call charges unnecessarily. Spoofing means that the HomeOffice Router automatically responds to these packets without ever sending them over ISDN.

Command syntax

The syntax of the command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip eth1 spoof
```

Using the command

- 1 To enable spoofing, enter `ip eth1 spoof`.

The router responds as follows:

```
Enable TCP keepalive spoofing <ENABLED or DISABLED>
(disabled)
```

- 2 Select `ENABLED` if required.

The router responds as follows:

```
Enable NetBIOS/IP keepalive spoofing <ENABLED or
DISABLED> (disabled)
```

- 3 Select `ENABLED` if required.

The spoofing status similar to the following appears:

```
Spoofing enable(s) updated.
```

```
TCP           Spoofing status      : enabled
TCP NetBIOS   Spoofing status      : enabled
```

This change will take effect the next time the unit is "software restarted" using "top boot".

IP filter sub-context commands

The commands in this sub-context let you configure and manipulate the protocol filtering commands.

In the `IP filter` sub-context, the command prompt is

```
HomeOffice: ip filter
```

The following commands are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Description
attachments	a	Attaches, detaches, and shows filters and interfaces or circuits.
copy	co	Copies an existing filter to another with a new name.
create	cr	Creates a new filter.
display	d	Shows all the currently defined elements for a given filter.
edit	e	Edits the contents of an existing filter.
remove	r	Deletes an existing filter.
test	te	Allows the testing of a filter by generating a packet that can be passed through the filter.

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To display a list similar to the one above, enter `help all`. To exit back to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.



CAUTION

Risk of loss of association

Protocol filtering is a complicated feature to set up. If you make a mistake, you may prevent any traffic from being forwarded, or cut off your remote administration session. Make sure you understand how it works before using it.

Note: For more information on protocol filtering, we recommend that you read a good reference book on network security, such as *Firewalls & Internet Security* by William Cheswick & Steven Bellovin, published by Addison-Wesley, ISBN number 0-201-63357-4.

attachments (a)

Command purpose

The `IP filter attachments` command lets you attach or detach filters from interfaces or circuits. It also lets you show the current attachments.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `attachments` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip filter attachments <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `delete`, or `show`.

Using the command

Adding filter attachments

- 1 To add filter attachments, enter `ip filter attachments add`.

The router prompts you for the name of the filter that you want to attach to the specified interface or circuit.

```
Filter name <up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

- 2 Enter the filter name.

The router prompts you for the interface to which the filter should be added.

```
Interface name <up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

- 3 Enter the name of the interface on which you want the filter to operate.

If the interface has circuits, the router prompts you for the circuit name.

```
Circuit name <up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

- 4 Enter the circuit name.

The router asks whether the filter should be used on the input or output data of the interface or circuit.

```
Direction to attach filter <input or output> :
```

 IP filter sub-context commands
attachments (a) (continued)

- 5** Enter input or output as required.
The router confirms that the attachment has been successful.
 Successfully attached filter trialf to circuit
 isdn2 on interface address 89.100.100.100

Deleting filter attachments

This command deletes an attachment between a specified filter and an interface or circuit.

- 1** To delete filter attachments, enter `ip filter attachments delete`.
The router prompts you for the number of the attachment you wish to delete.
 Delete attachment number <number or *> :
- 2** Enter the attachment number and press <Enter>.
The router confirms that the attachment has been deleted.
 Successfully detached filter

Displaying filter attachments

The `attachments show` parameter lets you view a list of all the currently defined attachments. The attachments are shown in the order in which they were entered:

Enter `ip filter attachments show`.

A display similar to the following appears:

Filter name	Interface/Circuit	Input/Output
1. trialf	89.100.100.100/isdn2	Output

IP filter sub-context commands

copy (co)

Command purpose

The `ip filter copy` command lets you copy an existing filter to another with a new name. The original filter is not altered. If you do not enter the name of either the source or destination filter, you are prompted for one.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `copy` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip filter copy
```

Using the command

- 1 To copy a filter, enter `ip filter copy`.
The router prompts you for a source filter.
Copy from filter name <Up to 15 Characters or *>:
- 2 Enter the name of the filter you want to copy.
The router prompts you for a destination filter.
Copy to filter name <Up to 15 Characters> :
- 3 Enter the name of the new filter.
The router confirms that copying is successful.
Filter main_1 copied to network_3

IP filter sub-context commands

create (cr)

Command purpose

The `ip filter create` command lets you define a filter and its component elements.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `create` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip filter create
```

Using the command

- To create an IP filter, type the following and press <Enter>.

```
ip filter create
```

The router responds as follows:

```
Create filter name <up to 15 Characters> :
```
- Enter a meaningful name for the filter you are about to create.

The router responds as follows:

```
Default element type <PERMIT or DENY> :
```
- Type `permit` or `deny` and press <Enter>.

Selecting `permit` means that a packet that has passed through any of the previous filter elements is forwarded.

Selecting `deny` means the packet is not forwarded.

The router responds as follows:

```
New filter created.
```

Add an element <YES or NO> (yes) :

The default element is always the final element in the list of filter elements. It acts on any packets that do not match any of the filter's normal or include filter elements. If a packet has passed through any previously defined elements, the default element either permits or denies the packet.
- Enter `YES` to enter an element.

The router responds as follows:

```
Position to insert <number, FIRST or LAST> (LAST) :
```

IP filter sub-context commands

create (cr) (continued)

This is the position in the filter list of elements. When the router is filtering, a packet is checked against each of the filter elements in the order of their position. The `LAST` position is the last normal or include filter element; the default element is always placed after these elements.

- 5 Respond as required.

The router responds as follows:

```
Insert filter or element <FILTER or ELEMENT>
(Element):
```

- 6 Enter a filter or element name.

Filter elements can be descriptions of permit or deny conditions, or the name of another existing filter. If the element is an included filter, then, during packet filtering, all the elements in that filter are checked.

Note: There are two types of elements other than the default element. These are called `normal` and `include filter`. `Include filter` elements are pointers to other filters. The other filters must exist before an `include filter` element that names them can be created.

If you include another filter, the default element of the included filter is not used.

The router responds as follows:

```
Source IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or
ANY> (ANY) :
```

- 7 Enter the source IP address.

The router responds as follows:

```
Destination IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or
ANY> (ANY) :
```

- 8 Enter the destination IP address.

The router responds as follows:

```
Protocol <ICMP, TCP, UDP or ALL> (All) :
```

- 9 Select the protocols you need to filter.

If you select TCP the router prompts you for the following:

```
TCP connection type <NEW or ANY> (any) :
```

 IP filter sub-context commands
create (cr) (continued)

TCP packets contain a set of control flags used to determine the purpose and contents of these packets. One of these flags (the SYN flag) is used to initiate the synchronization of packet sequence numbers during the establishment of TCP connections. It is useful to be able to specify whether packets with this flag enabled are permitted or denied. Therefore, you can now set a filter that either acts on TCP packets with the SYN flag enabled, or that act on any TCP packets.

- 10 Do the following:

If you want	Then
a filter to act only on TCP packets with the SYN flag enabled	select NEW.
a filter to act on any TCP packets	select ANY.

Note: The default is ANY.

The router prompts you for the Element Type:

Element type <PERMIT or DENY> (deny) :

- 11 Respond as required.

The definition of the filter element is confirmed.

Filter element inserted.

The router prompts as follows:

Add an element <YES or NO> (yes) :

The router prompts you repeatedly to add elements until you type no.

- 12 Type yes or no as required.

The filter you added appears in the filter display format.

```
IP Filter   trialf3
Filter Attachments : No Attachments
Filter Elements :
Source      Destination  Protocol  Source  Dest  Con  Type
Address/Mask Address/Mask      Port     Port
1. any      any          TCP       all     all   new  deny
   host      host
2. ----- Default element -----          deny
```

IP filter sub-context commands

create (cr) (continued)

If you attempt to add more filters or elements than your router's memory is capable of supporting, the following message appears indicating the filter table is full:

```
No space left in filter table.  
New element not added.
```

To add another filter or element, you must delete a filter or element.

Note: The `TCP connection type` prompt also appears in the `edit` command.

IP filter sub-context commands

display (d)**Command purpose**

The `ip filter display` command shows all the currently defined elements and attachments for a specified filter. If you do not enter a filter name on the command line you are prompted to do so.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `display` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip filter display
```

Using the command

- 1 To display defined elements and attachments for a filter, type the following and press <Enter>.

```
ip filter display
```

The router responds as follows:

```
Filter Name <Up to 15 Characters, ALL or *>:
```

- 2 Enter a filter name.

The filter attachments and elements for the specified filter similar to the following appear:

```
IP Filter   trialfl
Filter Attachments :
  No Attachments

Filter Elements :
Source      Destination  Protocol  Source  Dest  Con  Type
Address/Mask Address/Mask          Port   Port
1  any          any          TCP     all   all   new  deny
   host         host
2  ----- Default element ----- deny
```

IP filter sub-context commands

edit (e)

Command purpose

The `ip filter edit` command allows you to edit the contents of an existing filter.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `edit` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip filter edit
```

Using the command

- 1 To edit the contents of an existing filter, type the following and press <Enter>.

```
ip filter edit
```

The router responds as follows:

```
Filter Name <Up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

- 2 Enter the name of the filter you want to edit.

The router prompts you for an editing action.

```
Editing action <CHANGE, INSERT, DELETE, MOVE> :
```

See the relevant section below.

Changing filter contents

- 1 To edit the contents of existing elements, enter `change`.

The router prompts you for the number of the element you wish to edit.

```
Change element number <number or *> :
```

- 2 Type the element number and press <Enter>.

Note: Entering `*` at this prompt produces a display of the existing filter elements. If there are no elements currently defined, only the default element is shown.

If the selected element contains an included filter, the router prompts you to change the name for that included filter. For example:

```
Included Filter Name <Up to 15 Characters or  
*> (old_name) :
```

 IP filter sub-context commands
edit (e) (continued)

The existing name appears in parentheses and will be retained unless a new name is entered. The router checks that any entered name is a valid filter. A filter cannot include itself. Checks are made for endless loops. For example, where filter one includes filter two, which includes filter one, and so on.

If the selected element is a normal element, the router prompts you for each item in the element.

```
Source IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or ALL>
(134.191.000.000) :
```

```
Destination IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or ALL>
> (ALL) :
```

```
Destination IP address mask <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4 or
HOST > (HOST):
```

```
Protocol <ICMP, TCP, UDP or ALL> ( ALL) :
```

Note: If the element has its protocol field set to TCP or UDP, you are prompted for a source and destination port range. Valid ranges are a number qualified with the less than sign (<), the greater than sign (>), or (!)(not). For example, <24, >1024, !23 or a range such as 23 - 1023.

If you selected TCP at the Protocol prompt above, the router prompts you to specify the TCP connection type.

- 3** Select **NEW** if you want a filter to act only on TCP packets with the SYN flag enabled. Select **ANY** if you want the filter to act on any TCP packets. The default is **ANY**.

The router prompts you for the element type.

```
Element type <PERMIT or DENY> (permit) :
```

Note: The router prompts you for each item in the element.

If you choose to edit the default element, the only parameters you can edit are the `permit` and `deny` parameters for each direction. For example:

```
DEFAULT element type <PERMIT, DENY> (permit) :
```

IP filter sub-context commands

edit (e) (continued)

Inserting a filter

- 1 To create a new filter element to be added to the filter currently being edited, type `insert` and press <Enter>.

The new element can be a normal element or the name of an included filter. You cannot insert another default element.

The router responds as follows:

```
Position to insert <number, FIRST or LAST> :
```

- 2 Enter the position where you want to add the new filter or element.

This is the position in the filter list of elements. When the router is filtering, a packet is checked against each of the filter elements in the order of their position. The `LAST` position is the last `normal` or `include filter` element; the default element is always placed after these elements.

Further prompts are the same as for the filter create prompts. Follow the create command to complete the insertion of a filter.

Deleting a filter element

Note 1: The delete option does not allow you to delete a filter. It allows you to delete only filter elements. To delete a filter, use the `remove` command (on page 5-66) to remove a filter.

Note 2: You cannot delete the default element.

- 1 To delete an existing element from the filter list, type `delete` and press <Enter>.

The router responds as follows:

```
Delete element number <number or *> :
```

- 2 Enter the number of the element you wish to delete.

Entering `*` displays all the existing filter elements.

IP filter sub-context commands
edit (e) (continued)

Moving an element to another position in the filter access list

- 1** To move an existing element to a different position in the filter access list, type `move` and press <Enter>.

The router prompts you for the number of the element you need to move.

Move element from number <number or *> :

- 2** Enter the element number you need to move.

Entering * displays all the existing filter elements.

The router prompts you for a new position for that element.

Move element to number <number or *> :

- 3** Enter the new position in the sequence where you want the element to operate.

IP filter sub-context commands

remove (r)

Command purpose

The IP filter `remove` command removes an existing filter from the filter table.

Removing a filter also deletes any attachments that use this filter. Any elements in other filters that include the filter being removed are also deleted.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `remove` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip filter remove
```

Using the command

- 1 To remove a filter from the filter table, enter `ip filter remove`.

If you did not enter the name of the filter or interface with the command, the router prompts you to do so, as follows:

```
Remove filter name <up to 15 Characters or * > :
```

Note: Entering `*` at this prompt displays all the existing filters.

After specifying the filter name, you are asked to confirm the removal of the filter.

```
Confirm removal of filter <YES or NO> :
```

- 2 Enter `yes`.

This confirms removal of the filter as follows:

```
Filter <filter name> removed.
```

IP filter sub-context commands

test (te)

Command purpose

The `ip filter test` command lets you test the logic of the elements you have defined for a filter. It does this by generating a test packet that is passed through the filter.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `test` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ip filter test
```

Using the command

- 1 To test element logic for a filter, type the following and press <Enter>.

```
ip filter test
```

The router responds as follows:

```
Filter name <up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

- 2 Enter the name of the filter you wish to test.

- 3 Respond to the following prompts.

Note: More information about these prompts can be found in the topic "create (cr)" on page 5-57.

```
Packet source IP address <4 bytes b1.b2.b3.b4> :
```

```
Packet destination IP address <4 bytes  
b1.b2.b3.b4>:
```

```
Protocol <ICMP, TCP or UDP> :
```

```
Source port <number [14 chars]> :
```

```
Destination port <number [14 chars]> :
```

```
TCP connection type <NEW or ANY> (any) :
```

IP filter sub-context commands

test (te) (continued)

- 4 Enter the elements you want to include in the test packet.

The result of the test indicates whether the packet passed through the test filter. If the packet was denied, the information includes the filter element that stopped it.

For example, you receive the following message if the test packet did not match the first two filter elements and was then stopped by the third element.

```
packet denied by element 3
```

IPX context shell commands

The `ipx` context lets you manage IPX routing. Commands are grouped together into sub-contexts. The following sub-contexts are described, as examples:

Sub-context	Description
general	Configure IPX parameters that apply regardless of interface.
eth1	Configure IPX parameters specific to an Ethernet interface.
isdn2	Configure IPX parameters specific to an ISDN interface.

IPX general sub-context commands

The `ipx general` sub-context lets you manage those aspects of IPX routing that are not interface-dependent.

In the `IPX general` sub-context, the command prompt is

```
HomeOffice: ipx general
```

The following commands are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Description
address	ad	Sets up local IPX addressing information for bridging interfaces.
datalink	d	Specifies the data link layer for IPX to run over.
enabled	e	Enables or disables IPX on bridging interfaces.
filtersap	fs	Defines SAP filters.
forward	fo	Displays the dynamic Routing table.
rip	ri	Sets up the Routing Information Protocol (RIP) on bridging interfaces.
route	ro	Modifies the static Routing Table.
sap	sa	Sets up the Service Advertising Protocol (SAP) on bridging interfaces.
service	ser	Displays the dynamic, and modifies and displays the static Service tables.
statistics	ss	Displays IPX routing statistics.

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To quit back to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

IPX general sub-context commands

address (ad)

Command purpose

The `ipx general address` command sets up local IPX addressing information for bridging-only interfaces.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `address` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general address
```

Using the command

To set up an address, enter `ipx general address`.

To display the current address, enter `ipx general address show`.

When you enter the `ipx general address` command, the router prompts for the following values:

```
Network <8 hex digits, name, * or NONE> (23456789):
```

This identifies the network to which the router is attached.

```
Number of ticks in 1/18th secs (1 - 65535) (1):
```

The number of ticks is a measure of the time necessary to deliver a 576-byte packet to a node on that network, in 1/18th of a second. For wide area links, the time depends upon the line speed and how busy the line is.

Values should be conservative (that is, long)—probably never shorter than two seconds (36 ticks). If the line speed is 1200 baud, even that would be too quick. Probably five or ten times this value would be required.

```
Forward broadcasts to this interface  
<YES or NO> (yes):
```

IPX general sub-context commands

address (ad) (continued)

This lets you specify whether or not you want broadcasts forwarded onto the LAN.

```
Forward NetBIOS packets to this interface  
<YES or NO> (yes) :
```

This lets you specify whether or not to forward NetBIOS packets.

```
Forward Netware security packets to this interface  
<YES or NO> (yes) :
```

Novell Servers that know about each other exchange security packets every 60 seconds. This can increase WAN costs considerably. The router does not normally forward these security packets. If you do want to forward these packets, enter `yes` at this prompt.

```
Spoof Watchdog packets received on this interface  
<YES or NO> (yes) :
```

This lets you activate the use of Watchdog spoofing. This is a method of keeping costs down, by sending spoof packets from a router on a LAN to another router on the same network. These packets simulate the keep-alive packets normally sent across a WAN from a workstation to the server, to maintain the connection. Since they are sent locally, the transmission costs are lower.

```
Spoof NetBIOS Probe packets received on this  
interface <YES or NO> (yes) :
```

This lets you specify whether or not to spoof NetBIOS probe packets.

```
Spoof of SPX Probe packets received on this interface  
<YES or NO> (yes) :
```

IPX general sub-context commands
address (ad) (continued)

This lets you enable SPX Spoofing. SPX Spoofing is based on a similar principle to IPX Watchdog spoofing, but it is done on a different type of frame, and in both directions. When an SPX connection between a server and client is idle, packets are sent from the server to the client, and vice versa, to ensure that it is still there.

Version of SPX Spoofing <V1, V2 or PIGGYBACK> :

Choose the version of SPX spoofing you want to use. We recommend that you use `piggyback` as a default. You must use the same version at both ends of the link.

An update similar to the following appears:

IPX Bridge address updated

```
Network                : 23456789
Number of ticks        : 1
Forward broadcasts    : yes
Forward NetBIOS packets : yes
Forward security packets : yes
Watchdog packet spoofing : yes
SPX probe packet spoofing : yes
SPX probe version      : piggyback
NetBIOS probe packet spoofing : no
```

Note: If you make changes to the network address(es), these only take effect after you restart the router. So when you have finished setting the addresses, enter `top boot`.

IPX general sub-context commands

datalink (d)

Command purpose

The `ipx general datalink` command lets you specify which IPX data link layer to use. In the `ipx general` context, it only applies to bridging interfaces.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `datalink` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general datalink [show]
```

Using the command

Specifying the data link layer to use

To specify which data link layer to use, enter `ipx general datalink`.

You see this prompt:

```
Datalink layer <ETHER2, 802.2, SNAP or  
802.3> (802.2):
```

Select a data link layer to match the data link layer you have configured on your servers and workstations. The values are:

Layer	Description
ETHER2	IPX uses a unique packet header (type code). This value is suitable for networks that involve DEC or the TCP/IP protocol.
802.2	The router uses the IEEE and OSI standard 802.2 frame type. 802.2 is the default value.
SNAP	The router uses the IEEE and OSI standard 802.2 frame type with the 802.2 SNAP extension.
802.3	The router uses a standard Novell frame on a network that uses only NetWare.

IPX general sub-context commands
datalink (d) (continued)

Displaying the current datalink

To display which current layer is selected, enter `ipx general datalink show`.

The following appears:

```
Datalink layer : 802.3
```

IPX general sub-context commands

enabled (e)

Command purpose

The `ipx general enabled` command applies to bridging interfaces, and activates or deactivates IPX.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `enabled` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general enabled [show]
```

Using the command

Enabling IPX

To enable IPX, enter `ipx general enabled`.

The following prompt appears:

```
Enable IPX on bridged interfaces <YES or NO> (no) :
```

Enter `yes` if you want IPX to be enabled on bridging interfaces, or `no` if you want it to be disabled.

The change does not take effect until you restart the router.

Displaying interfaces on which IPX is enabled

To display a table showing the bridging interfaces on which IPX is enabled, enter `ipx general enabled show`.

The following appears:

```
IPX Protocol Table
```

Interface	Enabled	Current
eth1	yes	enabled
isdn2	yes	disabled
=> bridge	yes	enabled

IPX general sub-context commands

filtersap (fs)

Command purpose

The `ipx general filtersap` command lets you add, change, delete, and show SAP filters.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `filtersap` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general filtersap <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, or `show`.

Using the command

To work with SAP filters, enter `ipx general filtersap`.

The router prompts you for an editing action.

```
SAP filter element <ADD, CHANGE, DELETE or SHOW> :
```

See the relevant section below.

Adding SAP filters

Select `add` if you want to add a SAP filter element.

```
Filter name <up to 15 Characters> :
```

Enter the name of the filter.

```
Filter direction <IN or OUT> (NONE) :
```

Specify the direction (incoming or outgoing) to which the filter applies.

```
Filter service type(s) <all !number, number or range  
[14 chars]> (not assigned) :
```

Enter the number or range of IPX services that you do not want forwarded to other devices. Enter `all` if you do not want to forward information on any services.

IPX general sub-context commands

filtersap (fs) (continued)

An update similar to the following appears:

New filter added:

```
Name           : trialf2
Range          : 23
Application    : BOTH
Filter direction : IN
```

This change will take effect the next time the unit is “software restarted” using the `top boot` command.

Changing SAP filters

Select change if you want to change a SAP filter element.

Filter name <up to 15 characters or *>:

Enter the name of the filter whose SAP filter element you want to change.

```
Filter name <up to 15 characters or *>
(the_filter_name):
```

Enter the new name of the filter element.

```
Filter direction (IN or OUT) (IN):
```

Enter the new direction for the filter.

```
Filter service type(s) <number or range [14 chars]>
(23):
```

Enter the filter type range to suit your needs.

```
Filter interface application <LAN, WAN or BOTH> :
```

Choose whether you want this application to apply to the LAN or WAN, or both. You receive a confirmation that the filter has been updated.

IPX general sub-context commands

filtersap (fs) (continued)

```
Name           : trialf2
Range          : 23
Application    : LAN
Filter direction : OUT
```

Filter trialf2 updated.

Displaying SAP filters

Select `show` if you want to display a SAP filter element.

SAP Filter Table

Name	Range	Application	Filter direction
trialf2	all	LAN	OUT

Deleting SAP filters

Select `delete` if you want to delete a SAP filter element.

Filter name <up to 15 Characters> :

Enter the name of the filter whose SAP filter element you want to delete. You then see a summary of the filter you want to delete and a prompt asking you to confirm its deletion.

IPX general sub-context commands

forward (fo)**Command purpose**

The `ipx general forward` command lets you check the information currently stored in the IPX forwarding table.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `forward` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general forward [destination address]
```

Using the command

To view the IPX forwarding table, enter `ipx general forward`.

The following information appears.:

```

                IPX Dynamic Route Table
Destination- NextHopNode  NextHopNetwork Ticks Hops Lifetime Alt
10000000     -              -              1    1    direct  0
12341234     10456456451  54654654      1    1    static  0

```

Column	Description
Ticks	The number of ticks is a measure of the time necessary to deliver a 576-byte packet to a node on that network, in 1/18th of a second. If the destination is reached over the Ethernet interface, this is 1. For WAN links, the time depends on line speed, and how busy the line is.
Hops	This is the number of routers that traffic passes through to reach the destination.
Lifetime	This is the length of time before the entry times out. In the example above, the entry is for one of the router's own interfaces. This is marked as <code>direct</code> . Entries made manually by a user are <code>static</code> .
—continued—	

IPX general sub-context commands
forward (fo) (continued)

Column	Description
Alt	This is the number of alternative routes available to the destination. You can only enter one route statically. Alternative routes are acquired dynamically.
—end—	

To see an individual entry and all the stored alternatives, enter `ipx general forward`, followed by the appropriate destination address. For example:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general forward 10000000
```

When you press <Enter>, information similar to the following appears:

```
Destination network : 10000000
Next hop node       : -
Next hop network    : -
Number of ticks     : 1
Number of hops      : 1
Lifetime            : directly connected
```

IPX general sub-context commands

rip (ri)

Command purpose

Routing Information Protocol (RIP) is the dynamic routing protocol used on IPX networks. The `ipx general rip` command (which only applies to interfaces used for bridging) enables and disables RIP for IPX.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `rip` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general rip [show]
```

Using the command

Enabling or disabling RIP

To enable IPX RIP, enter `ipx general rip`.

The router prompts:

```
RIP on bridged interfaces <ON or OFF> (on) :
```

Enter `on` if you normally want RIP to run, or `off` if you do not want it to run at all.

Displaying RIP status on interfaces

To display the status of RIP on all of the router's interfaces, enter `ipx general rip show`.

A screen similar to the following appears with the arrow pointing to the current interface:

```
Routing Information Protocol

Interface      RIP      Retry      Retry
              Count   Interval
eth1           on       -          -
isdn2         off      5          1
=> bridge     off      5          1
```

IPX general sub-context commands

route (ro)

Command purpose

The `ipx general route` command configures the static entries in the Routing table.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `route` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general route <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, `learn`, or `show`.

Using the command

Statically entered routing addresses are stored permanently in the router's Routing table, where they define the routes by which the router reaches remote networks. You can enter up to three static routes to any remote network. The `route` command lets you enter this information explicitly.

The Routing table also contains information provided by RIP and ICMP.

Adding routes

- 1 To enter a static route to the Routing table, enter `ipx general route add` and press `<Enter>`.

The following prompt appears:

```
Destination network <8 hex digits, DEFAULT, name or *> :
```

- 2 Enter the name or address of the final destination network.
This must not be a network to which the router is directly connected.

The following prompts appear:

```
Next hop node <12 hex digits> :
```

```
Next hop network <8 hex digits> :
```

IPX general sub-context commands

route (ro) (continued)

- 3 Enter the node and network addresses of the next router down the line towards the destination network.

The next hop node must be on a network to which the router is directly attached.

The following prompts appear:

Number of ticks in 1/18th secs <1 - 65535> (36) :

Number of hops <1 - 15> (2) :

- 4 Enter the ticks and hops it takes to reach the destination network.

The following table describes ticks and hops.

Term	Description
Ticks	The number of ticks is a measure of the time necessary to deliver a 576-byte packet to a node on that network, in 1/18th of a second. If the destination is reached over the Ethernet interface, set this to 1. For wide area links, the time depends upon the line speed and how busy the line is. Values should be conservative (that is, long)—probably never shorter than two seconds (36 ticks). If the line speed was 1200 baud, even that would be too quick. Probably five to ten times this value would be required. The number of ticks you enter should be the sum of the time needed to cross all of the networks on the route to the destination.
Hops	The number of hops is the number of routers that traffic must travel through to reach the destination.

Note: If two routes have the same number of ticks, the one with the smallest number of hops is used (that is, with the smallest number of routers). You can enter an artificially high or low number of ticks and hops to force the router to use (or not use) a particular route.

If two routes have identical names, the router uses the static route and ignores the dynamic route.

IPX general sub-context commands

route (ro) (continued)

Changing routes

To edit a static route, enter `ipx general route change`, followed by the address of the remote network or node.

If you are not sure what is in the Routing Table, enter `ipx general route change *` to list the possible node and network addresses.

The router prompts for the same values as for `route add`.

Enter a new value or press <Enter> to leave a value unchanged. If there is more than one entry for the node or network you specify, each entry appears in turn.

Deleting routes

To delete a static route from the Routing table, enter `ipx general route delete`, followed by the node or network address.

If you are not sure exactly what is in the Routing Table, enter `route delete *` to list the possible node or network addresses.

The router displays the entry and the following prompt:

```
Delete IPX route <YES or NO> :
```

Confirm the deletion by entering `yes`.

Storing dynamic routes as static routes

To store routes that have been entered manually (that is, dynamically) for future use, enter `ipx general route learn`.

The router looks for individual dynamic entries, and asks you to confirm that you want them to be stored as static entries.

IPX general sub-context commands

route (ro) (continued)

Displaying static routes

To display static routes, enter `ipx general route show`.

When you press <Enter>, you see

```
IPX Static Route Table
Dest'n   Next hop      Next hop      Ticks  Hops  Warning
        node       network
01111111 100000000000  00000001     1      2      -
```

To display an individual entry, including Warnings, enter `ipx general route show <destination>`.

Note: To display the entire Routing table, use the `forward` command.

 IPX general sub-context commands

sap (sa)

Command purpose

The `ipx general sap` command lets you specify how the Service Advertising Protocol (SAP) is to operate on interfaces used for bridging. SAP provides devices on the network with information about which services are available from which devices.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `sap` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general sap [show]
```

Using the command

Configuring SAP

1 To reconfigure SAP, enter `ipx general sap`.

The following prompt appears:

```
SAP on bridged interfaces <ON or OFF> (on) :
```

2 Enter `on` if you want to enable SAP or `off` to disable SAP.

Displaying SAP status

To display the current state of SAP on all interfaces, enter `ipx general sap show`.

When you press <Enter>, you see

```
Service Advertising Protocol
```

	Interface	SAP	Retry Count	Retry Interval
	eth1	on	-	-
	bridge	on	5	1
=>	isdn2	off	5	1

IPX general sub-context commands

service (ser)

Command purpose

The Service table lists the services that the router can reach.

The `ipx general service` command configures the static entries in the Service table. You can also use it to display the dynamic entries in the Service table.

Information is also provided by SAP. Static entries are permanent and must be removed explicitly; they do not time out.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `service` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general service <action>
```

where <action> is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, `learn`, `dynamic`, or `show`.

Using the command

Adding static entries

- 1 To add a static entry to the Service table, enter `ipx general service add`.

The router prompts for the following information:

```
Name <up to 47 characters> :
```

- 2 Enter the name of the service.

It must be unique for that service type.

Note: Service names are case-sensitive. For example, if you define `Printer1` as a service name and later type `printer1`, you cannot access the required service.

The following prompt appears:

```
Service type <0 - 65535> :
```

 IPX general sub-context commands
service (ser) (continued)

This is a decimal value indicating the type of service provided. For example, the correct value for a File Server is 4. For a Print Server it is 7. Refer to your Novell system's documentation for a complete list of appropriate values.

The Name and the Service type must form a unique pair.

- 3** Enter the service type.

The following prompt appears:

Node <12 hex digits, name or *> :

- 4** Enter the node address of the device where the service is found.

The following prompt appears:

Network <8 hex digits, name or *> :

- 5** Enter the address of the network on which the node is providing service.

The following prompt appears:

Socket <0 - 65535> :

- 6** Enter the socket identifying the service.

If you need to find out the socket number of a service, you can enter `service show <servicename>` on a router attached to the same LAN as the server providing the service.

The following prompt appears:

Number of hops <1 - 15> (2)

- 7** Enter the number of routers that traffic has to pass through in order to reach the destination network.

Normally a client selects the service with the lowest number of hops. You can enter an artificially high or low number of hops to force clients to use (or not use) a particular service.

When you have finished adding an entry, the router displays it.

IPX service added:

```

Service name   : printing
Service type   : 2
Node           : 100000000001
Network        : 10000001
Socket         : 34
Number of hops : 1
  
```

IPX general sub-context commands

service (ser) (continued)

Changing a service

To change an existing static entry, enter `ipx general service change`.

The prompts are the same as those shown for `service add`. At each prompt, you can either enter a new value or press <Enter> to keep the current value.

Deleting a service

To delete a static entry from the Service table, enter `ipx general service delete`, followed by the entry's name.

The router displays the entry and asks you to confirm that you want to delete it.

Storing dynamic entries as static entries (learning services)

To save manually entered (dynamic) entries as static entries, enter `ipx general service learn`.

These do not time out and are available until deleted.

Displaying dynamic (and static) entries

Note: If you want to display only static service entries, use the `show` option.

To display both static and dynamic entries in the Service table, enter `ipx general service dynamic`.

All services learned dynamically by SAP as well as services added statically by the administrator appear as follows:

```
IPX Dynamic Service Table
Service  Type  Node          Network  Lifetime
printing 2    100000000001 10000001  static
```

IPX general sub-context commands**service (ser)** (continued)

To display a particular entry in more detail, enter `ipx general service dynamic <name>`.

A display similar to the following appears:

```
ipx general service dynamic printing
  Service name      : printing
  Service type     : 2
  Node              : 1000000000001
  Network           : 10000001
  Socket           : 34
  Number of hops   : 1
  Lifetime         : static
```

Displaying static entries only

Note: If you want to display both dynamic and static entries, use the `dynamic` option.

To display only static entries in the Service table, enter `ipx general service show`.

You see

```
IPX Static Service Table
Service Type Node           Network      Warning
printing  2    1000000000001  10000001    -
```

To display an individual entry, enter `ipx general service show`, followed by the service name.

IPX general sub-context commands
service (ser) (continued)

You see

IPX service entry:

```
Service name   : printing
Service type   : 2
Node           : 1000000000001
Network        : 10000001
Socket         : 34
Number of hops : 1
```

 IPX general sub-context commands

statistics (ss)

Command purpose

The `ipx general statistics` command displays information on IPX routing carried out by the router.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `statistics` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx general statistics
```

Using the command

Error and dropped datagram totals should remain low. If they rise suddenly, this may indicate a problem with your network.

To display IPX routing statistics, enter `ipx general statistics`.

The display looks like this.

```
Total datagrams received :           0
  For applications         :           0 (  0.00%)
  For forwarding           :           0 (  0.00%)
Discarded datagrams
  Header error            :           0 (  0.00%)
  Address error           :           0 (  0.00%)
  Protocol error          :           0 (  0.00%)
  Other error             :           0 (  0.00%)
Total datagrams sent      :          26175
  From applications       :          26175 (100.00%)
Discarded datagrams
  Lack of route           :           0 (  0.00%)
  Other error             :           0 (  0.00%)
```

Error types are described in the following table.

IPX general sub-context commands
statistics (ss) (continued)

Error type	Description
Header error	There is an error in the format of the IPX header.
Address error	The IPX is invalid or unexpected.
Protocol error	The datagram is not an IPX datagram. This may indicate problems at the Application level.

IPX interface sub-context commands

The HomeOffice Router has a sub-context for each of its physical interfaces. The commands in these sub-contexts let you configure the specific interface to route IPX.

In the IPX <interface> sub-context, the command prompts are

```
HomeOffice: ipx eth1
```

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2
```

The following commands are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Interface	Description
address	ad	eth1 isdn2	Allocates this interface's Node and Network address.
association	as	isdn2	Relates a Node or Network address to a circuit using the circuit name (ISDN only).
circuit	ci	isdn2	Relates a circuit to a Node or Network address using the circuit name (ISDN only).
datalink	d	eth1 isdn2	Selects the data link layer to use on an interface (Ethernet only).
diat	di	isdn2	Configures single-host or multi-host Dynamic IPX Address Translation (DIAT).
enabled	e	eth1 isdn2	Enables or disables IPX routing on this interface.
lookup	l	isdn2	Displays information about failed IPX calls (ISDN only).
—continued—			

6-28 IPX context shell commands

Command	Shortcut	Interface	Description
rip	ri	eth1 isdn2	Enables or disables Routing Information Protocol (RIP) on this interface.
sap	sa	eth1 isdn2	Specifies how Service Advertising Protocol (SAP) is to operate on this interface.
—end—			

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To return to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

IPX interface sub-context commands

address (ad)

Command purpose

The `ipx <interface> address` command is available in all contexts, and sets up node and network addresses for an interface.

Not all prompts appear on all interfaces.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `address` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx eth1 address
```

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2 address
```

Using the command

- 1 To define node and/or network addresses for an interface, enter `ipx <interface> address`, where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

The router prompts for the following:

```
Node <12 hex digits, name or *> (not assigned) :
```

Note: This prompt does not appear on an Ethernet interface. On Ethernet interfaces the router uses its MAC address as its node address, and can detect it automatically.

- 2 On an ISDN interface, enter the node address.

The router prompts for the following:

```
Network <8 hex digits, name or *> (not assigned):
```

- 3 Enter the address of the network to which the router is attached.

The router prompts for the following:

```
Number of ticks in 1/18th secs <1 - 65535> (1) :
```

IPX interface sub-context commands

address (ad) (continued)

The number of ticks is a measure of the time necessary to deliver a 576-byte packet to a node on that network, in 1/18th of a second.

Values should be conservative (that is, long)—probably never shorter than two seconds (36 ticks). If the line speed is 1200 baud, even that would be too quick. Probably five or ten times this value would be required.

If the destination is reached over the Ethernet interface, set this to 1.

For wide area links, the time depends upon the line speed and how busy the line is.

The router prompts for the following:

```
Forward broadcasts to this interface
<YES or NO> (yes):
```

- 4 Do the following:

For	Then
an Ethernet interface	specify if you want broadcasts forwarded onto the LAN or not.
an ISDN interface	set this to ON if you want to forward broadcasts onto the Ethernet interface.

The router prompts for the following:

```
Forward NetBIOS packets to this interface
<YES or NO> (yes) :
```

- 5 Specify whether or not to forward NetBIOS packets.

The router prompts for the following:

```
Forward Netware security packets to this interface
<YES or NO> (yes) :
```

Novell Servers that know about each other exchange security packets every 60 seconds. This can increase WAN costs considerably. By default, the router does not forward these security packets.

- 6 If you want to forward Netware security packets, enter *yes*.

The next prompt displayed depends on whether you are working with the Ethernet or ISDN interface.

IPX interface sub-context commands

address (ad) (continued)

If you are working with the Ethernet interface, see “Ethernet interface” on page 6-31. If you are working with the ISDN interface, see “ISDN interface” on page 6-33.

Ethernet interface

The router prompts for the following:

```
SpooF Watchdog packets received on this interface
<YES or NO> (yes) :
```

This lets you activate the use of Watchdog spoofing. This is a method of keeping costs down, by sending spoof packets from a router on a LAN to another router on the same network. These packets simulate the keep-alive packets normally sent across a WAN from a workstation to the router, to maintain the connection. Since they are sent locally, the transmission costs are lower.

1 Do the following:

If you	Then
want to activate Watchdog spoofing	enter <i>yes</i> .
do not want to activate Watchdog spoofing	enter <i>no</i> .

The router prompts for the following:

```
SpooF NetBIOS Probe packets received on this
interface <YES or NO> (yes) :
```

2 Enter *yes* if you want to activate the use of NetBIOS probe spoofing; otherwise, enter *no*.

The router prompts for the following:

```
SpooF of SPX Probe packets received on this
interface <YES or NO> (yes) :
```

This lets you activate the use of SPX probe spoofing. Based on a similar principle to Watchdog spoofing, SPX Spoofing significantly reduces network costs because probe packets are responded to locally by the router and are not sent across the WAN link. In general, you should enable SPX probe spoofing over a synchronous interface only if you are running boundary routing.

IPX interface sub-context commands

address (ad) (continued)

When you enable spoofing on an Ethernet interface, this spoofs packets received that are destined for WAN interfaces. It does not spoof packets destined for another Ethernet interface that has spoofing enabled.

3 Do the following:

If you	Then
want to activate SPX probe spoofing	enter <i>yes</i> .
do not want to activate SPX probe spoofing	enter <i>no</i> .

The router prompts for the following:

Version of SPX Spoofing <V1, V2 or PIGGYBACK> :

It is recommended that you use Piggyback spoofing of SPX Probe packets. This means that the packets are only spoofed when a call is not open and are passed as normal when a call is open. The same version must be used at both ends of the link.

4 Enter the SPX spoofing version.

The display similar to the following appears.

```
eth1 IPX address update:
  Network                : 33333333
  Number of ticks        : 1
  Forward broadcasts     : yes
  Forward NetBIOS packets : yes
  Forward security packets : yes
  Watchdog packet spoofing : yes
  SPX probe packet spoofing : yes
  SPX probe version      : V1
  NetBIOS probe packet spoofing : yes

  IPX on this interface will be enabled.
```

Changes to node or network address(es) take effect only after you restart the router. So when you have finished setting the addresses, enter *quit*. When you are asked if you want to restart the router, type *y*.

 IPX interface sub-context commands
address (ad) (continued)

ISDN interface

The router prompts for the following:

```
Route/service hold-down timer in minutes
<0-1440> (3):
```

This prompt does not appear on Ethernet interfaces.

When the router realizes that a circuit is not responding, it deletes all routes and services dependent on that circuit.

- 1 Enter the number of minutes that should elapse before all dependent routes and services are deleted.

Note: It is sometimes appropriate to set a value of less than three minutes, where a faster response to the failure of a circuit is required. This is only recommended if the unit is operating on a leaf node of the network.

Within a mesh, changing this timer may have unpredictable results if other RIP entities are running with the default timing; a value of three minutes is recommended and is suitable for most situations.

Increasing this timer has the effect of reducing the number of network reconfigurations on networks that suffer short-term link failures. The network also takes longer to reconfigure when a permanent link failure occurs.

The display similar to the following appears.

```
isdn2 IPX address update:
  Node                : 08003904C813
  Network              : 32425456
  Number of ticks     : 36
  Forward broadcasts  : no
  Forward NetBIOS packets : no
  Forward security packets : no
  Route/service hold-down timer : 3
```

Changes to node or network address(es) take effect only after you restart the router. So when you have finished setting the addresses, enter `quit`. When you are asked if you want to restart the router, type `y`.

Displaying node and network addresses

To display the router's node and network addresses on each of its interfaces, enter, `ipx <interface> address show`.

IPX interface sub-context commands

association (as)

Command purpose

The `ipx isdn2 association` command lets you relate a node or network address to an ISDN circuit using its circuit name.

This command is not available in Ethernet sub-contexts.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `association` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2 association <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, or `show`.

Using the command

To work with associations, enter `ipx isdn2 association`.

The router prompts you for an editing action.

```
association entry <ADD, CHANGE, DELETE or SHOW> :
```

See the relevant section below.

Creating new associations

- 1 To create a new association for this interface, enter `ipx isdn2 association add`.

The router prompts for the following information:

```
Node <12 hex digits> :
```

- 2 Enter the node address of the destination you want to reach.

You do not need to enter the network address as the router can work this out.

Note: At this prompt, you can also enter `*` to list circuit names that can be associated with this interface. A circuit name is required for the next prompt.

The router prompts for the following information:

```
Circuit Name <Up to 15 Characters or *>:
```

 IPX interface sub-context commands
association (as) (continued)

- 3** Enter a circuit name and press <Enter>.
 The circuit must be accessible from this interface.
The router prompts for the following information:
 IPX <ENABLED or DISABLED> (enabled) :
- 4** Enable or disable IPX.
The router prompts for the following information:
 RIP mode <BROADCAST, TRIGGERED or OFF> (triggered):
- 5** Enable or disable RIP.
The router prompts for the following information:
 SAP mode <BROADCAST, TRIGGERED or OFF> (triggered):
- 6** Enable or disable SAP.
When you have completed these parameters, you see
 IPX association added:
 Node : 100000000000 Network : 10000000
 Circuit Name : admin RIP : off

Disabling IPX routing on a circuit

You can also use *association* to disable IPX routing on this circuit. You can enter the entire association on the command line, as follows:

```
ipx isdn2 association add 000000000001 personnel
enabled off off
```

When you press <Enter>, you see

```
IPX association added:

Node          : 000000000001  Network : 10000000
Circuit Name  : personnel    RIP    : off
IPX           : enabled     SAP    : off
```

IPX interface sub-context commands

association (as) (continued)

Changing associations

To change an existing association, enter `ipx isdn2 association change`.

The prompts are the same as for `association add`.

Deleting associations

- 1 To delete an association, enter `ipx isdn2 association delete`.

The router prompts for the node address.

Node <12 hex digits, name or *> :

- 2 Enter the node address and press <Enter>.

The router displays the association you want to delete and asks you to confirm deletion.

```
Node          : 100000000000   Network   : 10000000
Circuit Name  : admin         RIP       : off
IPX           : enabled      SAP       : off
Delete IPX association <YES or NO> :
```

The router does not delete the entry until you confirm that you want to do so.

- 3 To confirm the deletion, press <Enter>.

The following message appears:

```
IPX association to circuit admin deleted.
```

IPX interface sub-context commands
association (as) (continued)

Displaying associations

To display the IPX association table for the ISDN interface, enter `ipx isdn2 association show` and press <Enter>.

You see

```

                                IPX Association Table
Node Address Circuit Name  IPX      RIP    SAP  Warning
1000000000000  admin    enabled  off    off   13
0000000000001  personnel enabled  off    off   13
```

To see more detailed information about a particular entry, including warnings, enter the node address immediately after the command, as follows:

```
ipx isdn2 association show 100000000000
```

When you press <Enter>, you see

```
Node           : 1000000000000      Network      : 10000000
Circuit Name   : admin            RIP          : off
IPX            : enabled          SAP          : off
```

IPX interface sub-context commands

circuit (ci)

Command purpose

The `ipx isdn2 circuit` command lets you use a circuit name to relate a circuit and a node or network address.

Note: The `circuit` command and the `association table` are different ways of accessing the same information.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `circuit` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2 circuit
```

Using the command

Changing circuit information

- 1 To change an entry in the IPX circuit table, enter `ipx isdn2 circuit` followed by the name of the circuit you want to change.
If you do not know the name of the circuit, enter `*` to display a list of valid entries.

The router prompts you for the node address.

```
Node <12 hex digits, name or *> :
```

- 2 Enter the node address for the circuit you want to change.

The router prompts for the following information:

```
IPX <ENABLED or DISABLED> (enabled) :
```

- 3 Define if you want IPX to be enabled on this interface.

The router prompts for the following information:

```
RIP mode <BROADCAST, TRIGGERED or  
OFF> (triggered) :
```

IPX interface sub-context commands

circuit (ci) (continued)

- 4 Define which RIP mode you require on this circuit.

The router prompts for the following information:

SAP mode <BROADCAST, TRIGGERED or
OFF> (triggered) :

- 5 Define which SAP mode you require on this circuit.

Displaying the IPX circuit table

To display the IPX circuit table, enter `ipx isdn2 circuit show`.

The display looks like this:

IPX Association Table

Circuit Name	Node Address	IPX	RIP	SAP	Warning
admin	100000000000	enabled	off	off	13
manufacturing	<not assigned>	disabled	-	-	-
personnel	000000000001	enabled	off	off	13

To display a particular entry in more detail, including warnings, enter the circuit immediately after the command. For example:

```
ipx isdn2 circuit show admin
```

When you press <Enter>, you see

```
Circuit Name : admin           Network : 10000000
Node         : 100000000000    RIP      : off
IPX          : enabled        SAP      : off
```

IPX interface sub-context commands

datalink (d)

Command purpose

The `ipx eth1 datalink` command lets you specify which IPX data link layer to use on your network.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `datalink` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx eth1 datalink [show]
```

Using the command**Selecting the data link layer**

- 1 To define which data link layer is used on your network, enter `ipx eth1 datalink`.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Datalink layer <ETHER2, 802.2, SNAP or  
802.3> (802.3):
```

- 2 Select a data link layer to match the data link layer you have configured on your servers and workstations.

The following table lists the possible values:

Value	Description
ETHER2	IPX uses a unique packet header (type code). This value is suitable for networks that involve DEC or the TCP/IP protocol.
802.2	The router uses the IEEE and OSI standard 802.2 frame type. 802.2 is the default value.
SNAP	The router uses the IEEE and OSI standard 802.2 frame type with the 802.2 SNAP extension.
802.3	The router uses a standard Novell frame on a network that uses only NetWare.

IPX interface sub-context commands
datalink (d) (continued)

Displaying the current data link layer

To display the current data link layer, enter `ipx eth1 datalink show`.

The following appears:

```
Datalink layer : 802.3
```

IPX interface sub-context commands

diat (di)

Command purpose

The `ipx diat` command is available on the ISDN interface. It configures Dynamic IPX Address Translation (DIAT) for single-host or multi-host use on a specified circuit. It also enables and disables DIAT.

DIAT is enabled by default.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `diat` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2 diat
```

Using the command

- 1 To configure IPX DIAT, enter `ipx isdn2 diat`.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Circuit name <up to 15 Characters or *> : default
```

- 2 Type the name of the circuit for which you want to change the DIAT parameters.

The router prompts as follows:

```
DIAT mode <DISABLED, SINGLEHOST or MULTIHOST>  
(multihost) :singlehost
```

- 3 Do the following:

If	Then
only one computer is connected to the router	enter <code>singlehost</code> .
more than one computer is connected to the router	enter <code>multihost</code> .

When you have made your selection, the changed configuration appears:

```
Circuit updated:  
Circuit Name : default  
DIAT Mode : singlehost
```

IPX interface sub-context commands

enabled (e)

Command purpose

The `ipx <interface> enabled` command lets you enable and disable IPX routing on an interface.

This command is available on all interfaces and works identically on each of them.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `enabled` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx eth1 enabled [show]
```

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2 enabled [show]
```

Using the command

Enabling or disabling IPX

- 1 To enable or disable IPX on an interface, enter `ipx <interface> enabled`, where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Enable IPX on interface <YES or NO> (yes) :
```

- 2 Enter `yes` if you want IPX to be enabled on this interface, or `no` if you want it to be disabled.

The change does not take effect until you restart the router.

IPX interface sub-context commands
enabled (e) (continued)

Displaying IPX status on interfaces

To display a table showing the interfaces on which IPX is enabled, enter `ipx <interface> enabled show`, where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

The following appears:

IPX Protocol Table

Interface	Enabled	Current
eth1	yes	enabled
isdn2	yes	disabled
bridge	yes	disabled

IPX interface sub-context commands

lookup (I)**Command purpose**

The `ipx isdn2 lookup` command displays the last 20 lookup failures recorded in the association table.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `lookup` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2 lookup
```

Using the command

A lookup failure occurs when there is no association for a given remote network. Lookup failures may indicate an incorrect configuration or the failure of a WAN link. This information may be useful if you are having trouble communicating with a particular destination.

To display the lookup failures, enter `ipx isdn2 lookup`.

The display looks like this:

```
IPX Association Lookup Failures
```

Next hop router	Circuit	Fails	Last fail	Reason
274593854628	-	5	7d 0h	Circuit not defined
router.91	paris	10	1d 12h	IPX disabled on circuit
router.43	berlin	1	10m 1s	Circuit disabled
13460122034	-	25	2s	Circuit not defined

Parameters are described in the following table.

Parameter	Description
Fails	Tells you how many association lookups have failed for this circuit.
Last fail	Tells you how long ago the last failure occurred.

IPX interface sub-context commands

rip (ri)

Command purpose

The `ipx <interface> rip` command lets you configure the Routing Information Protocol (RIP). Normally, you will want to run RIP on the LAN interface(s). On the WAN interfaces, you may want to disable RIP to save costs.

This command is available on all interfaces.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `rip` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx eth1 rip [show]
```

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2 rip [show]
```

Using the command

Enabling or disabling RIP

- 1 To enable or disable RIP, enter `ipx <interface> rip` where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

The router prompts as follows:

```
RIP <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

- 2 Enter `on` if you normally want RIP to run, or `off` if you do not want it to run at all.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Ignore incoming RIP updates <yes or no> (no) :
```

- 3 Respond as required.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Triggered Retry Count <5 - 100 or INFINITY> (5) :
```

Note: The triggered option is not available on Ethernet interfaces.

IPX interface sub-context commands

rip (ri) (continued)

- 4** Define the number of times that RIP tries to connect with RIP on the destination router if they cannot communicate (for example, due to failure in communications).

The router prompts as follows:

```
Triggered Retry Interval in minutes <1-10> (1) :
```

- 5** Define the time interval between triggered retry attempts.

The changes are confirmed as follows:

RIP updated:

```

RIP                               : on
Ignore incoming RIP updates: no *****
Triggered Retry Count             : 5
Triggered Retry Interval          : 1 minutes

```

This change takes effect the next time the unit software is restarted using `top boot`.

Displaying RIP status

To display the status of RIP on all interfaces, enter `ipx <interface> rip show`.

A display similar to the following appears:

```

Routing Information Protocol
Interface  RIP  Retry Count  Retry Interval  Ignore Update
* eth1    on   -           -              -
=> isdn2  on   5           1              No
sync2    off  5           1              No
bridge   on   -           -              -

```

Entries marked '*' will take effect the next time the unit is restarted.

The arrow points to the current interface. The default is for RIP to be OFF on the WAN and running on the LAN.

IPX interface sub-context commands

sap (sa)

Command purpose

Service Advertising Protocol (SAP) provides devices on the network with information about available services and the devices that provide them. Normally, you will want to run SAP on the LAN interface(s). On the WAN interfaces you may want to disable SAP to save WAN costs.

The `ipx <interface> sap` command lets you specify how SAP operates over this interface. It is available in all contexts.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `sap` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: ipx eth1 sap [show]
```

```
HomeOffice: ipx isdn2 sap [show]
```

Using the command

Configuring SAP

- 1 To configure SAP on an interface, enter `ipx <interface> sap` where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

The router prompts as follows:

```
SAP <ON or OFF> (off) :
```

- 2 Enter `on` if you normally want SAP to work on this interface, or `off` to disable SAP.

The default is for SAP to be disabled on the WAN and enabled on the LAN.

IPX interface sub-context commands

sap (sa) (continued)

Note: The next two prompts appear only if you are modifying the isdn2 interface.

Triggered Retry Count <5 - 100 or INFINITY> (5) :

- 3** Define the number of times that SAP tries to connect with SAP on the destination router if they cannot communicate (for example, due to failure in communications).

The router prompts as follows:

Triggered Retry Interval in minutes <1-10> (1) :

- 4** Define the time interval between triggered retry attempts.

The router confirms the changes.

SAP updated:

```
SAP                : on
Triggered Retry Count  : 5
Triggered Retry Interval : 1 minutes
```

This change takes effect the next time the unit software is restarted using `top boot`.

Displaying SAP status

To display the current state of SAP on all interfaces, enter `ipx <interface> sap show` where <interface> is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

When you press <Enter>, you see a screen similar to the following:

Service Advertising Protocol

	Interface	SAP	Retry Count	Retry Interval
	eth1	on	-	-
=>	isdn2	off	5	1
	bridge	off	5	1

Network context shell commands

The `network` context manages the router's physical interfaces. The commands are grouped into sub-contexts, one for each interface. The sub-contexts depend on the number and type of interfaces installed on your router. Network sub-contexts are:

Sub-context	Description
general	Configure use of WAN links on the router.
eth1	Manage an Ethernet interface.
isdn2	Manage an ISDN interface.

Some protocols need to have certain parameters set up separately for each interface. Commands dealing with these parameters are not described in the `network` context but in the protocol-specific contexts.

Network general sub-context commands

The `network general` sub-context lets you manage the Point-to-Point Protocol.

In the `network general` sub-context, the command prompt is:

```
HomeOffice: network general
```

The following commands are described in this section:

Command	Shortcut	Description
<code>decode</code>	<code>d</code>	Collects specified types of packets in the system trace buffer and decodes them for analysis.
<code>multilink</code>	<code>m</code>	Configures PPP Multilink box-wide.
<code>ppp</code>	<code>pp</code>	Configures PPP box-wide.

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To return back to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

Network general sub-context commands

decode (d)**Command purpose**

The `network general decode` command collects and decodes a variety of information packets. This command will most likely be used by experienced network administrators or technical support personnel for diagnostic purposes.

Note: If you enable this feature, it significantly reduces the performance of your router.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `decode` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network general decode
```

Using the command

1 To initiate packet collection, enter `network general decode`.

The router prompts for the type of packets to be collected.

```
Type of decode <Combine l, p, d, b, f, o, m, c, a,
L, P, D, B, F, O, M, C, A or 'off'> (off) :
```

The parameters are described in the following table.

Parameter	Description
a	Enables tracing at all levels.
b	Collects BAP and BACP packets in the system trace buffer.
c	Traces packets above the compression level.
d	Collects data packets in the system trace buffer.
f	Collects the first packet sent when the link opens (that is, the one that opens the call).
l	Collects LCP negotiation packets in the system trace buffer.
—continued—	

Network general sub-context commands

decode (d) (continued)

Parameter	Description
m	Traces packets above the multilink level.
o	Collects packets at the outermost level (below multilink, compression, and so on). This is the default level.
p	Collects Echo Requests and LQM packets in the system trace buffer.
A	Enables tracing and decoding at all levels.
B	Collects BAP and BACP packets in the system trace buffer and decodes them.
C	Traces packets above the compression level and decodes them.
D	Collects data packets and decodes them.
F	Collects and decodes the first packet sent when the link opens.
L	Collects LCP negotiation packets and decodes them.
M	Traces packets above the multilink level and decodes them.
O	Collects packets at the outermost level (below multilink, compression, and so on) and decodes them.
P	Collects Echo Requests and LQM packets, and decodes them.
—end—	

- 2 Enter the type of packet(s) you want to collect, or enter `off` if you want to disable the decode function.

The router prompts you for the circuits from which to collect packets.

Circuit's context or ALL circuits (ALL) :

You can choose to collect packets from a particular circuit or from all circuits.

Network general sub-context commands

decode (d) (continued)

- 3** Enter the context from which you want to select a circuit or select all circuits.

You see a display confirming which type of packet you are collecting, for example:

```
PPP decode : D
```

If you choose a particular context (for example, the isdn2 context), the router prompts you for the name of the circuit in that context from which you want to collect packets.

- 4** Enter the name of the circuit. For example

```
Circuit name (NONE) : nortell
```

You see a display confirming which type of packet you are collecting, the name of the circuit, and the context you have chosen.

```
PPP decode : D
```

```
Circuit      : nortell (isdn2)
```

Displaying decode status

To determine if the decode function is enabled or not, enter network general decode show.

For example, if the decode function is not enabled, you see

```
PPP decode : off
```

Network general sub-context commands

multilink (m)

Command purpose

The `network general multilink` command lets you set up the PPP Multilink feature on your router. You can use multilink to

- combine links into a multilink bundle
- sequence packets

Note 1: Before configuring PPP Multilink on your router, make sure you have configured two virtual circuits. These can either be two ISDN virtual circuits or an ISDN link aggregated with a leased line.

Note 2: In order for PPP Multilink to work, PPP Multilink negotiation must be enabled at both ends of the link.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `multilink` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network general multilink
```

Using the command

Enabling PPP multilink

- 1 To enable PPP multilink, enter `network general multilink`.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Negotiate PPP Multilink option <enabled or disabled> (disabled):
```

- 2 Type `enabled` to set up PPP Multilink negotiation on your router. If negotiation is successful, PPP Multilink combines all available channels into a multilink bundle.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Negotiate discriminator option <enabled or disabled> (enabled):
```

- 3 Enter `ENABLED`.

When the discriminator option is enabled, each end of each link identifies itself, to help bundle together links.

Network general sub-context commands

multilink (m) (continued)

The router prompts as follows:

Negotiate short sequence number option <enabled or disabled> (disabled):

Usually packets are transmitted with 24-bit sequence numbers when they are negotiated through PPP. If you have configured both units for short sequence numbers by selecting `ENABLED` at both ends of the link, a 12-bit sequence number will be negotiated. This makes the frame smaller so that there is less data to transmit.

If you are combining links that have different transmit times, for example, a transatlantic leased line augmented with a satellite ISDN link, you should disable this option. This is because packets are sent at different speeds along these lines and a short sequence number would cause the packets to lose their synchronization.

- 4 Enable or disable the short sequence number option as required.

The router prompts as follows:

Negotiate Bandwidth Allocation Protocol <ENABLED or DISABLED> :

- 5 Enable or disable the Bandwidth Allocation Protocol on your router as required.

To fine tune individual circuits, use the `bap` command. You have now configured PPP Multilink to work on your router.

Fine tuning PPP multilink

To carry out fine-tuning of PPP Multilink, change to the `network isdn2` sub-context and use the `multilink` command. This lets you configure functions such as packet fragmentation, packet ordering, and omission of compression for a single link.

You can carry out further fine-tuning by using the `ppp` command in the `network general` sub-context. Use this command to configure address and control field compression, and protocol field compression.

Note: Users performing fine-tuning of PPP Multilink should have greater networking experience than those just configuring PPP Multilink to work on their unit.

Network general sub-context commands

ppp (pp)

Command purpose

The `network general ppp` command is available in the `network general` and `network <interface>` sub-contexts. It is an abbreviation of Point-to-Point Protocol.

Use `network general ppp` to

- enable Address and Control Field Compression
- enable Protocol Field Compression

Note: If you have configured PPP Multilink to run on your unit using the `network general multilink` command, you can use `network general ppp` to carry out further fine-tuning on your multilink packets. Refer also to the `multilink` command in the `network isdn2` context.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `ppp` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network general ppp
```

Using the command

- 1 To set up compression, enter `network general ppp`.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Address and Control Field Compression <ENABLED or  
DISABLED> (disabled):
```

- 2 Enable this option to compress the address and control field of a frame.

This also applies to multilink frames.

The router prompts as follows:

```
Protocol Field Compression <ENABLED or  
DISABLED> (disabled):
```

The default is `DISABLED`.

Network general sub-context commands

ppp (pp) (continued)

- 3** Enable this option to compress the protocol field of a frame.
- If you are running PPP Multilink, the multilink headers in your multilink frames are compressed, along with any other protocol headers in the frame.
- Note:** Enabling Address and Control Field Compression and Protocol Field Compression may cause interoperability problems with other vendors' equipment. If you experience problems, you may choose to disable them.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Authentication Restart Timer in seconds <1 - 255>
(10) :
```
- 4** Respond as required.

## Network interface sub-context commands

The commands in the `network <interface>` sub-context let you manage the router's interface(s).

In the `network <interface>` sub-context, the command prompts are:

```
HomeOffice: network eth1
```

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2
```

The following commands are described:

| Command     | Shortcut | Interface type | Description                                                                                                |
|-------------|----------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| activate    | ac       | isdn2          | Initiates dialing from a HomeOffice Router to a peer device.                                               |
| address     | ad       | eth1<br>isdn2  | Displays or configures the physical address for an interface.                                              |
| alias       | al       | eth1<br>isdn2  | Changes the name of this sub-context.                                                                      |
| bap         | ba       | isdn2          | Fine tunes the Bandwidth Allocation Protocol (BAP).                                                        |
| callback    | cb       | isdn2          | Configures the callback feature.                                                                           |
| calls       | ca       | isdn2          | Displays information about calls made on ISDN.                                                             |
| circuit     | ci       | isdn2          | Creates a circuit to a remote destination. With this command, you can create PBX, voice, or data circuits. |
| configure   | conf     | eth1<br>isdn2  | Configures the router to match the WAN service used.                                                       |
| default     | d        | isdn2          | Sets default call idle and non-preemption timers.                                                          |
| —continued— |          |                |                                                                                                            |

| <b>Command</b> | <b>Shortcut</b> | <b>Interface type</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                        |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| enabled        | e               | eth1<br>isdn2         | Enables or disables an interface.                                         |
| multilink      | m               | isdn2                 | Configures multilink parameters on a circuit.                             |
| ppp            | pp              | isdn2                 | Configures the PPP protocol.                                              |
| rates          | rat             | isdn2                 | Monitors calls made and received by the router dynamically.               |
| rejects        | rej             | isdn2                 | Displays information about incoming and outgoing calls.                   |
| security       | sec             | isdn2                 | Uses PAP or CHAP network security.                                        |
| statistics     | ss              | eth1                  | Displays octet and packet values for the Ethernet interface.              |
| status         | st              | eth1<br>isdn2         | Displays information about the ISDN or Ethernet connection.               |
| test           | te              | isdn2                 | Tests ISDN circuits.                                                      |
| timer          | ti              | isdn2                 | Configures the waiting time of the backup and failed circuit retry timer. |
| tune           | tu              | isdn2                 | Fine tunes the parameters used by a circuit.                              |
| vcs            | v               | isdn2                 | Displays information about virtual circuits.                              |
| —end—          |                 |                       |                                                                           |

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To exit back to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

Network interface sub-context commands

## activate (ac)

---

### Command purpose

The `network isdn2 activate` command initiates dialing from a HomeOffice Router to a Rapport Dialup Switch 112. It is possible for a link to be enabled, but not active. If this is the case, the router at one end of the link will not make or receive calls, but spoofing packets will continue to be sent across the link. The `network isdn2 activate` command allows the user to control when the security dialog boxes are presented by Local Manager.

It is essential that you activate the link if you are using a SecurID/Digital Pathways server for security authentication. If you do not, the router will be unable to dial the dialup switch, and a call will not be made.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `activate` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 activate
```

### Using the command

- 1 To initiate a call, enter `network isdn2 activate`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit name <up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

- 2 Enter name of the circuit you want to use.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Activate circuit <YES or NO> (yes) :
```

- 3 Enter `yes` or `no` as required.

*The active state is shown:*

```
Active state updated:
Active interface: no
```

Network interface sub-context commands

## address (ad)

---

### Command purpose

The `network <interface> address` command displays the physical address of Ethernet and ISDN interfaces. For ISDN interfaces, this command can be used to change the ISDN address of an interface.

The command works differently, depending in which sub-context it is used.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `address` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network eth1 address [show]
```

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 address [show]
```

### Using the command

#### Displaying the Ethernet interface

To display the Ethernet address and state of the Ethernet interface, enter `network eth1 address`.

The following appears:

```
Ethernet address : 0800390241C2
Interface state : enabled
```

The router's Ethernet address is its physical address on the Ethernet LAN. Since it is allocated by the router, you cannot change it.

## Network interface sub-context commands

**address (ad)** (continued)**Changing the ISDN interface**

In an ISDN network, the `network isdn2 address` command records the ISDN address allocated by your ISDN service provider and changes the router's ISDN address. You can also use this command to allocate a sub-address.

*Note:* An ISDN address must be assigned for the interface to be enabled.

- 1 To change the ISDN address, enter `network isdn2 address`.

| If you are running                                                                   | Then                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| National ISDN-1 or 5ESS Custom Multipoint (see the <code>system isdn</code> command) | you will be asked to enter the ISDN address and SPID (Service Profile Identifier) for each B-channel.<br><br><i>Note:</i> For National ISDN-1, you can also use the auto-detect feature to determine the address and SPID. |
| National ISDN-2                                                                      | you will be asked to enter a single ISDN address and SPID.                                                                                                                                                                 |

Address information for channel 1

Interface ISDN address <up to 41 digits> (5551234) :

The address and SPID should have been assigned by your ISDN authority. If you use sub-addressing, add the sub-address to the end of the address, separated by a hyphen. An example of an ISDN address with a sub-address is: 0315551234-1.

*Note:* If you decide that you want to turn ISDN sub-addressing off later, use the `network isdn2 address` command. Re-type the ISDN address without the sub-address.

- 2 Enter the ISDN address for channel 1.

SPID for this address <up to 20 digits, NULL or Auto> (555123411) :

---

**Network interface sub-context commands**  
**address (ad) (continued)**

---

- 3** Enter the SPID for channel 1, or if you are using National ISDN-1, enter `auto`.  
*For National ISDN-1, the router prompts you for a second ISDN address and SPID.*  
Address information for channel 2  
Interface ISDN address <up to 41 digits> (5552345) :
- 4** Enter the ISDN address for channel 2.  
SPID for this address <up to 20 digits, NULL or Auto> (555234511) :
- 5** Enter the SPID for channel 2, or if you are using National ISDN-1, enter `auto`.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
Maximum transmission unit <576 or 1500> (576) :
- 6** Enter an appropriate MTU for your network.  
Possible values are 576 and 1500. On an ISDN interface, you should select 1500, unless you have to use poor quality lines with a lot of errors on the link. In this case, select 576 for optimum throughput.

**Displaying the ISDN address configuration**

To display the current ISDN address configuration on an interface, enter `network isdn2 address show`.

A display similar to the following appears:

```
ISDN address configuration details:
 Interface ISDN address : 246102121162
 Interface MTU size : 576
 Interface state : enabled
```

```
Integrator: network isdn2
```

Network interface sub-context commands  
**address (ad)** (continued)

---

If you are running National ISDN-1 or 5ESS Custom Multipoint, the router displays your current ISDN address configuration on each interface. (If you are running National ISDN-2, you will only have a single ISDN address and SPID.) You see

```
ISDN address configuration:
 Interface ISDN address 1 : 5549424
 Interface ISDN SPID 1 : 12345
 Interface ISDN address 2 : 1031
 Interface ISDN SPID 2 : 103122
 Interface MTU size : 1500
 Interface state : enabled
```

## Network interface sub-context commands

**alias (al)**

---

**Command purpose**

The `network <interface> alias` command allows you to change the name of the interface sub-context. You may want the sub-context name to reflect the part of the network to which this context gives access, or you may want to use a name that is more appropriate in your own language. Changing the name of this context also changes the name of any other context with the same name. For example, you may want to change the name of `network eth1` to `local`.

*Note:* You can still use the original name of the sub-context. The sub-context can have more than one name.

This command is available in all `network` sub-contexts and operates identically in each.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `alias` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network eth1 alias
```

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 alias
```

**Using the command**

- 1 To rename the interface sub-context, enter `network <interface> alias` where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Rename eth1 context <up to 7 characters> (eth1):
```

The name you choose can have a maximum of seven characters. The router rejects any name that clashes with the name or short form of a command or other context.

Network interface sub-context commands  
**alias (al)** (continued)

---

- 2 Enter the new name.  
*The new name appears.*  
If you enter `local` and press <Enter>, you see  
`eth1 context updated.`  
`network local`  
If you do this, all of the <protocol> `eth1` sub-contexts are also renamed `local`.

## Network interface sub-context commands

**bap (ba)****Command purpose**

The network `isdn2 bap` command fine tunes the Bandwidth Allocation Protocol (BAP) on your router. This protocol is used when extra bandwidth is needed to cope with data flow (for example, with bandwidth aggregation). It ensures that both ends of a link agree on when to open or close additional links.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `bap` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 bap
```

**Using the command**

- 1 To configure BAP, enter `network isdn2 bap`.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Circuit name <up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

- 2 Enter the name of the circuit you want to configure.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Use default circuit's configuration <YES or
NO> (yes):
```

- 3 Enter `yes` if you have set up a default circuit and want to use its configuration.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Retry timer in seconds <1 - 10> (2) :
```

- 4 Enter the number of seconds that should elapse between retransmissions.

You may need to retransmit the packet if there is no response from previous attempts.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Maximum number of Requests or Indications
sent <1 - 3> (2) :
```

Network interface sub-context commands

**bap (ba)** (continued)

---

- 5** Enter the number of BAP requests or indications that should be sent if there is no response to previous attempts.

The default value is 2.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Status timer in seconds <1 - 120> (20) :
```

- 6** Enter the number of seconds the router should wait for a call status indication after you have agreed to receive the call.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Don't ask peer for phone number <ENABLED or
DISABLED> (disabled) :
```

- 7** Disable this option if you specifically do not want the peer to suggest a phone number; otherwise, select `enabled`.

*The configuration of the circuit appears. For example:*

Circuit updated:

```
Circuit name : bap1
 Use default circuit's configuration : no
 Retry timer in seconds : 3
 Maximum Requests to be sent : 2
 Status timer in seconds : 34
 Don't ask peer for phone number : enabled
```

## Network interface sub-context commands

**callback (cb)****Command purpose**

The `network isdn2 callback` command provides a mechanism to disable callback on all the circuits on a particular ISDN interface. It is enabled by default.

You must use this command to enable any callback configuration that has been made using the `circuit` command.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `callback` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 callback
```

**Using the command**

- 1 To enable or disable callback, enter `network isdn2 callback`.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Allow outgoing callback requests <DISABLED or
ENABLED> (enabled) :
```
- 2 Enable outgoing callback requests that you have configured with the `circuit` command.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Accept incoming callback requests <DISABLED or
ENABLED> (enabled) :
```
- 3 Enable incoming callback requests that you have configured with the `circuit` command.

*You see an updated display of the command.*

```
Interface callback parameters updated.
```

```
Allow outgoing callback requests : enabled
Accept incoming callback requests : disabled
```

Network interface sub-context commands

## calls (ca)

---

### Command purpose

The `network isdn2 calls` command is available on ISDN interfaces. It displays the same information about the calls made across these interfaces to remote destinations.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `calls` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 calls [<destination circuit name>]
```

### Using the command

#### network isdn2 calls

The displays are similar for all interfaces:

```
WAN Call Statistics
```

| Remote router   | Successful Calls out | Successful Calls in | Total duration | Current duration |
|-----------------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------|------------------|
| L Listener      | 0                    | 0                   | -              | -                |
| P Manufacturing | 36                   | 33                  | 23h 1m 34s     | 54s              |

**Note:** The listener circuit is marked with L. The listener answers all incoming ISDN calls. It performs the basic authorization that identifies the calling party. The last two values displayed are described in the following table.

| Call value       | Description                                                                |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Total duration   | This is the total time of calls between this router and the remote router. |
| Current duration | This is the length of time the current call has been in existence.         |

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**calls (ca)** (continued)

---

**network isdn2 calls <destination circuit name>**

To display more information about calls to a particular destination, enter call followed by the destination circuit name. For example:

|           |             |          |            |        |
|-----------|-------------|----------|------------|--------|
| Call      | Calls       | Call     | Calls      | Calls  |
|           | accepted    | duration | rejected   | now    |
| Out       | 21          | -        | 0 [ 0.00%] | 0      |
| In        | 17          | -        | 0 [ 0.00%] | 0      |
| All calls | Transmitted | rate/s   | Received   | rate/s |
| Packets   | 0           | -        | 0          | -      |
| Bridge    | 0 [ 0.00%]  | -        | 0 [ 0.00%] | 0      |
| IP        | 0 [ 0.00%]  | -        | 0 [ 0.00%] | 0      |
| IPX       | 0 [ 0.00%]  | -        | 0 [ 0.00%] | 0      |
| Octets    |             |          |            |        |
| Bridge    | 0 [ 0.00%]  | -        | 0 [ 0.00%] | 0      |
| IP        | 0 [ 0.00%]  | -        | 0 [ 0.00%] | 0      |
| IPX       | 0 [ 0.00%]  | -        | 0 [ 0.00%] | 0      |

**Note:** The statistics displayed do not include calls made or received using the `isdn2 test` command.

Network interface sub-context commands

## **circuit (ci)**

---

### **Command purpose**

The `network isdn2 circuit` command is used to configure the Circuit table for each interface. The Circuit table contains the information the router needs to make connections with remote destinations. In particular, it lets you associate the physical address (ISDN) of a remote destination with a name.

Three types of circuits may be created:

- voice circuits  
Voice circuits are used with analog devices such as telephones or fax machines.
- data circuits  
Data circuits are used with digital devices such as the HomeOffice Router.
- PBX circuit  
The PBX circuit is used with the Meridian digital telephone. Only one PBX circuit can be configured.

### **Command syntax**

The syntax of the `circuit` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 circuit <action>
```

where <action> is either add, change, delete, change, or show.

### **Using the command**

#### **Adding a voice or data circuit**

- 1 To add a voice or data circuit to the circuit table, enter  
`network isdn2 circuit add`

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Circuit Name <Up to 15 Characters or *> :
```

---

**Network interface sub-context commands**  
**circuit (ci) (continued)**

---

- 2** Enter a name for the circuit.
- Each circuit must have a name. Use this name to refer to the circuit when setting up protocol-specific information in the `protocol interface` sub-contexts.
- The router responds as follows:*
- ```
Circuit type <DATA, VOICE or PBX> (data) :
```
- 3** Select voice or data.
- Choose `voice` to configure this circuit for use with a telephone. Choose `data` to configure the circuit for a digital device.
- The ISDN service distinguishes between these configurations.
- The router responds as follows:*
- ```
Outgoing call type <64KBPS, 56KBPS, SPEECH, 3.1KAUDIO> (64kbps) :
```
- 4** Respond as required.
- The router responds as follows:*
- ```
ISDN address to call <Up to 41 digits or DISABLED> :
```
- 5** Enter the address the router should use when making a call to the remote destination.
- Ensure that you include any necessary codes.
- The router responds as follows:*
- ```
ISDN address received <Up to 41 digits or NULL> :
```
- As a security measure, the network can use Calling Line Identification (CLI) to identify the calling unit to the called unit.
- Note:** Caller ID is the North American equivalent of CLI.
- When an ISDN device receives a call, it checks the address of the calling unit to see if it recognizes it. If it does not, it does not take the call.
- 6** Enter the address the router should expect in calls from the unit at the other side of this circuit.
- Ensure that you include any necessary area codes.

Network interface sub-context commands

**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

The remote sub-address should be included only if the switch forwards the calling sub-address.

**Note:** If you include the remote sub-address in the ISDN address received, and the switch does not forward the calling sub-address, then the circuit will fail to come up and will be logged as an incoming reject under Authentication refused.

*The router responds as follows:*

Use multiple ISDN addresses <NO or YES> (no) :

- 7 Enter `yes` only if you are using National ISDN-1 (Basic Rate) and if you have two ISDN addresses (one for each B-channel).

*The router prompts you for the address to call and the address received (as above).*

If you are not sure what to enter here, try making a call from the remote unit to this one. The router rejects the call and notes that it has done so in its Rejects table. Use the `rejects` command to find out the address of the router that made the rejected call, and enter it here.

*The router responds as follows:*

Circuit state <DISABLED or ENABLED> (enabled)

- 8 Respond as required.

Default active state <INACTIVE or ACTIVE> active) :

- 9 Respond as required to define the default state of the circuit.

The default state is resumed if the HomeOffice Router is rebooted and the interim configuration is lost. The default state should be disabled when using third-party security authentication so that you can control when to disable or enable the circuit and the authentication process.

*The router responds as follows:*

Circuit type <PRIMARY or SECONDARY> (primary) :

- 10 Respond as required.

*The router responds as follows:*

Use default circuit's configuration <YES or NO> (yes):

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

- 11** Press <Enter> if you want your circuit to use the configuration of the default circuit.

*No further prompts appear if you choose to adopt the default circuit's configuration; otherwise, the router responds as follows:*

```
Compression <DISABLED, NEGOTIATE, SPIDER or STAC>
(negotiate) :
```

- 12** Choose the compression method.

Data compression allows you to send data more efficiently between two devices.

| If                                                               | Then                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| you choose <code>negotiate</code>                                | the router negotiates a compression algorithm with the remote unit.                                                                                  |
| you would prefer to specify the compression algorithm to be used | choose either <code>PREDICTOR</code> , <code>SPIDER</code> , or <code>STAC</code> , depending on what type of compression the other unit is running. |
| you choose anything other than <code>disabled</code>             | two more compression-related prompts appear.                                                                                                         |

```
Compression with multilink <BUNDLE or
LINK> (bundle) :
```

- 13** Choose the compression with multilink method.

Multilink compression only works if both ends of the link are set the same way.

## Network interface sub-context commands

**circuit (ci)** (continued)

| Compression method                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| link<br>(compression after Multilink)                     | This means that data is compressed separately at each link. Choose <code>LINK</code> if the remote device's circuit is running over a Primary Rate ISDN card that performs hardware compression (such as a Rapport Dialup Switch 112). By choosing <code>LINK</code> you can take advantage of the faster compression in the remote Primary Rate ISDN card. This can result in improved overall throughput, despite the slightly less effective compression. |
| bundle<br>(sometimes called compression before Multilink) | This means that data is compressed before the packets are split onto the different links of the call. Bundle compression provides the better compression ratio. You should choose <code>BUNDLE</code> if your router is interoperating with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a Rapport Dialup Switch 8E</li> <li>• a Rapport Dialup Switch 112 (using software compression)</li> <li>• another router</li> </ul>                                     |

Notify compression error `<RESET-REQUEST or CONFIG-REQUEST>` (`reset-request`) :

- 14** Choose the default `reset-request` unless you know that the remote unit uses `config-request` to notify the occurrence of a compression error.

*The router responds as follows:*

Bridging on circuit `<DISABLED or ENABLED>` (`enabled`) :

---

**Network interface sub-context commands**  
**circuit (ci) (continued)**

---

- 15** Press <Enter> if you wish to bridge over this interface.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Routing on circuit <DISABLED or
ENABLED> (disabled) :
```

- 16** Type enabled if you wish to route over this circuit.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Support for triggered RIP and SAP <DISABLED or
ENABLED> (disabled) :
```

Triggered RIP and SAP are methods of keeping costs down on ISDN WANs. Normally, RIP and SAP are used on a network to pass on messages to other units. Every 30 seconds or every minute, a message sent to these routers tells them that the source router is active and viable. Although this is useful on leased lines, it is expensive on ISDN circuits where charges are made according to transmission time.

**Note:** Triggered RIP and SAP must be enabled where the Multiple Static Routes feature is being used.

Instead of confirming availability at frequent intervals, routing information can be configured statically, in a routing table. This is an adequate solution for less complex networks. For more complex networks, where the configuration may change, triggered RIP and SAP management is used.

This is how it functions:

- On power-up, your HomeOffice Router and others exchange RIP information.
- Instead of repeating this information, they do not exchange packets until the configuration changes. Hence, configuration changes trigger an update.

**Note:** If the ISDN address to call is set to `DISABLED`, support for triggered RIP and SAP must be disabled as outgoing calls cannot be made on this circuit.

Network interface sub-context commands

**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

- 17 Enable or disable triggered RIP and SAP as required.

*The router responds as follows:*

Callback <DISABLED, ACCEPT or REQUEST> (disabled) :

This prompt allows you to configure Callback on ISDN circuits. The example below shows ISDN default values. This is a cost-saving feature allowing you to take advantage of lower tariffs (where there is a discrepancy in the tariffs charged by the source and destination telephone companies).

- 18 Enter ACCEPT if you want to accept Callback at the local site, or REQUEST if you want to request that calls be returned from the remote site.

*The router responds as follows:*

Callback identification <CLI or PPP> (ppp) :

It is generally cheaper to operate Callback with CLI than with PPP. This is because CLI rejects the initial call and immediately dials back to the originating site; there is no charge made for this initiating call by most European PTTs. PPP accepts the initial call and negotiates callback with the originating site. However, PPP interoperates with other products; CLI may not.

**Note:** PPP must be running for Callback to work, regardless of whether you choose CLI or PPP at this prompt. If you choose PPP at this prompt, you must configure either PAP or CHAP for Callback to work.

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

- 19** Select CLI or PPP as required.

*The router responds as follows, depending on your response in step 18.*

| If you choose to                      | Then                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| accept Callback at the local site     | <i>the router responds as follows:</i><br>Delay before returning call in seconds <1 - 60> (1) :<br>Enter the length of time that you want to allow for incoming calls to be cleared.                                                                                                     |
| request Callback from the remote site | <i>the router responds as follows:</i><br>Maximum wait for returned call in seconds <5 - 120> (20) :<br>Enter the maximum length of time that you want to wait for the initial call to be returned.<br>The data is queued until the remote unit returns the call or this period elapses. |

*The router displays details of the circuit you added.*

Circuit added:

```

Circuit name : TMtest
ISDN address to call : 555 1212
ISDN address received : 555 3661
Circuit state : enabled
Default active state : active
Circuit type : primary
Outgoing Call Type : 64kbps

Use circuit defaults : yes
Encapsulation : ppp
Compression : disabled
Compression with multiline : n/a
Notify compression error : n/a
Bridging : disabled
Routing : enabled
Support for RIP and SAP : disabled
Callback : accept

```

## Network interface sub-context commands

**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

```
Callback identification : ppp
Delay before returning call : 20

Use multilink defaults : yes
Use PPP defaults : yes

Use security defaults : no
Use timer defaults : yes
Use tune defaults : yes
```

This example shows an ISDN circuit. The Tuning Parameters and the Bandwidth-on-demand criteria can be defined for all circuits on a router using the `default` command, and are set for individual circuits using the `tune` command.

**Changing the pbx circuit**

- 1 To make changes to the PBX circuit, enter  

```
network isdn2 circuit change
```

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Circuit name <up to 15 characters or *> (Meridian) :
```
- 2 Enter Meridian.  

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Outgoing call type <64 KBPS or 56 KBPS> (56 Kbps) :
```
- 3 Enter the speed at which outgoing calls should be made.  

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Your telephone number <up to 41 digits or NULL> :
```
- 4 Enter the new telephone number, if required.  

*The router responds as follows:*

```
PBX telephone number <up to 41 digits or DISABLED> :
```
- 5 Enter the ISDN address (phone number) that you need to dial to reach the PBX.  

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Accept calls from <up to 41 digits or DISABLED> :
```

---

**Network interface sub-context commands**  
**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

- 6** Enter the ISDN address (phone number) of the PBX.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Circuit state <DISABLED or ENABLED> (enabled) :
- 7** Define whether the circuit you are setting up is to be enabled immediately.  
The default is enabled  
*The router displays the new configuration details.*

**Changing a voice or data circuit**

**Note:** Most of the prompts in this procedure are the same as for `network isdn2 circuit add`. For more detailed information about what to enter at these prompts, see “Adding a voice or data circuit” on page 7-24.

To keep the values in subsequent prompts unchanged, press <Enter>.

- 1** To make changes to an existing circuit, enter  
`network isdn2 circuit change`  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Circuit name <up to 15 characters or \*> (isdn2) :
- 2** Enter the name that identifies the circuit you want to change.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Outgoing call type <64K, 56K, SPEECH, 3.1K Audio> :
- 3** Respond as required.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
ISDN address to call <up to 41 digits or DISABLED> :
- 4** Enter the ISDN address (phone number) that you need to dial to reach the remote unit.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
ISDN address received <up to 41 digits or DISABLED> :

Network interface sub-context commands

**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

- 5** Enter the ISDN address (phone number) of the remote unit.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Use multiple ISDN addresses <NO or YES> (no) :
- 6** Enter *yes* if you are dialing to a National ISDN-1 connection and want to set up more than one ISDN address.  
**Note:** This feature is only available in North America.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Circuit state <DISABLED or ENABLED> (enabled) :
- 7** Define whether the circuit you are setting up is to be enabled immediately.  
The default is enabled.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Default active state <INACTIVE or ACTIVE> (active) :  
Each circuit on a router has a default active state. This is the state that will be resumed if the router is rebooted and interim configuration values are lost.
- 8** If you are using a security server, you should set the default active state to *inactive*.  
Each circuit can then be activated individually.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Circuit type <PRIMARY or SECONDARY> (primary) :
- 9** Respond as required.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Use default circuit's configuration  
<YES or NO> (yes) :
- 10** Press <Enter> if you want your circuit to use the configuration of the default circuit.

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

No further prompts appear if you choose to adopt the default circuit's configuration.

*If you choose no, the following compression prompts appear:*

Compression <DISABLED, NEGOTIATE, PREDICTOR, SPIDER or STAC> (negotiate):

Compression with multilink <BUNDLE or LINK> (bundle) :

See "Adding a voice or data circuit" on page 7-24 for information about how to respond to these prompts.

*The router responds as follows:*

Notify compression error <RESET-REQUEST or CONFIG-REQUEST> (reset-request) :

- 11** Choose the default `reset-request` unless you know that the remote unit uses `config-request` to notify the occurrence of a compression error.

*The router responds as follows:*

Bridging on circuit <DISABLED or ENABLED> (enabled) :

- 12** Press <Enter> if you wish to bridge over this interface.

*The router responds as follows:*

Routing on circuit <DISABLED or ENABLED> (disabled) :

- 13** Type `enabled` if you wish to route over this interface.

*The router responds as follows:*

Support for triggered RIP and SAP <DISABLED or ENABLED> (disabled) :

- 14** Type `enabled` if you expect to run triggered RIP or triggered SAP.

We recommend that you use triggered mode. See "Adding a voice or data circuit" on page 7-24 for more information.

*The router responds as follows:*

Callback <DISABLED, ACCEPT or REQUEST> (disabled) :

This prompt enables you to configure Callback for the secondary circuit. See "Adding a voice or data circuit" on page 7-24 for more information.

## Network interface sub-context commands

**circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

**Deleting a circuit**

**Note:** You cannot delete default circuits.

- 1 To delete an entry from the circuit table, enter

```
network isdn2 circuit delete
```

*The router prompts you to enter the name of the circuit.*

- 2 Enter the name of the circuit you want to delete.

*The router displays details of the circuit you have asked to delete, and waits for confirmation before deleting it.*

```
Delete Circuit <YES or NO> :
```

- 3 Enter *yes*.

**Changing the default circuit**

To make changes to the default circuit, enter `network isdn2 circuit change default`.

**Displaying circuit details**

To display the circuit table for this interface, enter

```
network isdn2 circuit show
```

This displays the circuit table for this interface which looks like this:

```
ISDN Circuit Table
Name ISDN address to call State Type Compress Warn
Dallas 19721234567 enabled primary negotiate -
Meridian 19057654321 enabled pbx disabled -
admin 555 enabled primary negotiate -
default n/a n/a default disabled -
listener n/a enabled listener disabled -
voice disabled enabled voice disabled -
```

The display above applies to an ISDN interface. This status also appears in the `calls` and `vcs` commands, and in the individual circuit display, as seen in the following note.

## Network interface sub-context commands

### **circuit (ci)** (continued)

---

*Note:* The listener circuit is used to receive calls when Calling Line Identification is not available. On an ISDN link, it accepts all incoming calls without CLI, or those with CLI that do not match any ISDN Address Received. It then checks the incoming call using PAP or CHAP. If you want to prevent the latter from being accepted and carrying out PAP or CHAP negotiations, you should disable the listener circuit.

#### **Displaying the details for a specific circuit**

To display an individual circuit, enter `network isdn2 circuit show` followed by the name of the circuit.

Full details of the circuit appear.

Network interface sub-context commands

## configure (conf)

---

### Command purpose

The `network <interface> configure` command lets you set up the physical parameters on the LAN and configure the router to match the WAN service to which you are attaching it.

This command is available on Ethernet and ISDN interfaces, and works differently in each.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `configure` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network eth1 configure [show]
```

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 configure [show]
```

### Using the command

#### Configuring the Ethernet interface

This procedure allows you to enable bridging and/or routing on the router.

- 1 To define the router's physical parameters on the LAN, enter `network eth1 configure`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Bridging on interface <ENABLED or
DISABLED> (enabled):
```

- 2 Type `enabled` if you want to enable bridging or `disabled` if you do not.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Routing on interface <ENABLED or
DISABLED> (disabled):
```

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**configure (conf)** (continued)

---

- 3** Type `enabled` if you want to enable routing or `disabled` if you do not.

*When you have finished, the router displays the updated configuration.*

Interface configuration updated:

```
Bridging on interface : yes
Routing on interface : no
Media type : automatic
```

These changes do not take place until you restart the router.

### Configuring the ISDN interface

This procedure is used if you are attaching the router to a PBX, changing the ISDN configuration.

- 1** To configure the ISDN interface, enter `network isdn2 configure`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

**Note:** This prompt may appear only if you are using Euro-ISDN.

Numbering plan identification <STANDARD or E163/4>  
(STANDARD):

- 2** Do the following:

| If you                                                | Then                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| are attaching the router to a Siemens Octopus PBX     | change the value to E163/4, so that the Siemens Octopus PBX can recognize the number plan the router is using. |
| are not attaching the router to a Siemens Octopus PBX | use the standard configuration.                                                                                |

*The router prompts as follows:*

Multiple subscriber numbering in use <YES or NO> (no):

Network interface sub-context commands

**configure (conf)** (continued)

---

This allows several devices, such as telephones, faxes, routers, and so on, to be attached to one ISDN line but to have different numbers. Each device can then listen to all incoming calls on the line, but accept and reply only to calls sent directly to its individual number. Multiple Subscriber Numbering is only available from certain service providers.

- 3** Enter `yes` if you want to use Multiple subscriber dialing.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Self identification <YES or NO> (no):
```

If you enable this feature, the router provides its own ISDN number in outgoing calls.

- 4** Enter `NO`, as the network usually provides the calling ISDN number to the remote unit.

However, in some circumstances (especially when using a PBX), you would set this to `YES`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

**Note:** The following two prompts do not appear on all ISDN variants.

```
Generate high layer compatibility <YES or NO> (no):
```

If the network in your country supports Higher Layer Compatibility (HLC), extra information is provided in calls, such as whether a call is from a fax machine, telephone, Group 4 Fax, or is a video conference call, and so on.

- 5** Enter `YES` when the remote unit you are connecting to is on an ISDN bus with multiple types of devices.

All the devices on the ISDN bus must be capable of checking Higher Layer Compatibility or it will not work. The disadvantage of HLC is that it is not very common and you will probably find that you have to use Multiple Subscriber Numbering (MSN) or sub-addressing to achieve the same effect.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Check high layer compatibility <YES or NO> (no):
```

---

**Network interface sub-context commands**  
**configure (conf)** (continued)

---

- 6** Enter `YES` if the router you are configuring is on an ISDN bus with multiple devices that can check for HLC.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- Use keypad information element <YES or NO> (no):
- If you are using National ISDN 1 or 2, enter `yes` to send dialed digits to the switch by the keypad; otherwise, enter `no`, to send dialed digits to the switch by the Called Party Number information element.
- Note:** If you find that your switch does not accept the dialed digits (for example, the dial tone does not switch off after you dial a digit) and you are not able to connect to a destination, then change your response to this prompt.
- 7** Respond as required.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- Additional call offering <YES or NO> (no) :
- Additional call offering allows you to pre-empt a data call by an analog call on a B-channel when both B-channels are in use.
- Note:** You can only use additional call offering if you have subscribed to this service offered by your service provider.
- 8** Choose `yes` to enable this feature.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- Note:** This prompt appears only if NI-1 has been chosen.
- Strict NI-1 Conformance <YES or NO> (no) :
- 9** Enter `no`.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- Remove TEI when cable disconnected <YES or NO> (yes) :
- This option affects the way the HomeOffice Router re-establishes layer 2 communication with the ISDN PBX after the ISDN cable has been removed and then re-connected.
- If you respond with `yes`, then whenever the HomeOffice Router detects that the cable has been reconnected, it assumes that all of the Terminal Endpoint Identifiers (TEIs) negotiated earlier are no longer valid and asks the PBX to assign new TEIs.

Network interface sub-context commands

**configure (conf)** (continued)

---

If you respond with `no`, the HomeOffice Router asks the PBX to verify that the TEIs it was using earlier are still valid. If the PBX instructs the HomeOffice Router to remove those TEIs, the HomeOffice Router attempts to negotiate new values.

Normally, you should respond with `no` to this prompt.

You should respond with `yes` if your ISDN service is provided by a Meridian PBX or if you are experiencing difficulties reconnecting after the cable is replaced.

**Displaying ISDN interface configuration details**

To display the current ISDN configuration, enter `network isdn2 configure show`.

A display similar to the following appears:

ISDN layers 2 and 3 configuration:

```
ISDN connection type : multipoint
ISDN B Channels enabled : 2
Numbering plan identification : e163/4
Multiple subscriber numbering : yes
Self identification : yes
Generate high layer compatibility : yes
Check high layer compatibility : yes
Additional call offering : yes
```

## Network interface sub-context commands

**default (d)****Command purpose**

The `network isdn2 default` command lets you see which users are using the default circuit configuration. Every WAN interface has a default circuit.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `default` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 default
```

**Using the command**

To determine who is using the default circuit values, enter `network isdn2 default`.

A display similar to the following appears:

Using Circuit Default Table

| Name     | Circuit | Multilink | PPP | Security | Timer | Tune |
|----------|---------|-----------|-----|----------|-------|------|
| default  | n/a     | n/a       | n/a | n/a      | n/a   | n/a  |
| listener | n/a     | yes       | yes | no       | n/a   | yes  |
| user1    | no      | yes       | yes | no       | n/a   | yes  |
| radius   | n/a     | n/a       | n/a | n/a      | n/a   | n/a  |

In the above display, `user1` is using the default circuit values for Multilink, PPP, and Tune.

Network interface sub-context commands

## enabled (e)

---

### Command purpose

The `network <interface> enabled` command allows you to enable or disable an interface. This command is available on all interfaces, working identically on each of them.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `enabled` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network eth1 enabled [show]
```

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 enabled [show]
```

### Using the command

**Note:** This command affects only the current interface. To change another interface, enter it as a sub-context, and then use the `enabled` command there. You cannot specify another interface from the current interface.

#### Enabling or disabling an interface

- 1 To enable or disable an interface, enter `network <interface> enabled` where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Enable interface <YES or NO> (no) :
```

- 2 Enter `yes` if you want to enable this interface or `no` if you want to disable it.

Any change you make does not take effect until you restart the router.

Network interface sub-context commands  
**enabled (e)** (continued)

---

**Displaying the status of all interfaces**

To display the status of all interfaces, enter `network isdn2 enabled show`.

You see

## Interface Table

| Interface | Enabled | Current  |
|-----------|---------|----------|
| eth1      | yes     | enabled  |
| =>isdn2   | no      | disabled |

*Note:* The => indicates the current context.

Network interface sub-context commands

## multilink (m)

---

### Command purpose

The `network isdn2 multilink` command lets you fine tune the PPP Multilink feature.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `multilink` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 multilink [show]
```

### Using the command

#### Configuring PPP Multilink

- 1 To fine tune the PPP Multilink feature, enter `network isdn2 multilink`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit name <up to 15 characters or *> :
```

- 2 Type the name of the circuit on which you wish to carry out fine-tuning.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Use default circuit's configuration <YES or NO>
(yes):
```

- 3 Press <Enter> if you want your circuit to use the configuration of the default circuit.

No further prompts appear if you choose to adopt the default circuit's configuration.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Fragment packets <enabled or disabled> (enabled) :
```

If you set this option to `ENABLED`, PPP Multilink splits packets so that they are distributed in parallel down all channels in use. This reduces latency and speeds up data transmission. If you select `ENABLED` you can then specify the minimum size of packet to fragment.

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**multilink (m)** (continued)

---

- 4** Enter `enabled` if you want PPP Multilink to split packets.  
*The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Minimum size of packet to fragment
<128 - 1024> (256) :
```
- 5** Type the minimum size of packet that you wish to fragment.
The range is from 256 to 1024 octets.
Note: If you are experiencing frame loss, disable this option.
The router prompts as follows:
- ```
Generate NULL fragments <ENABLED or DISABLED>
(disabled): disabled
```
- If you are experiencing packet loss, you can send NULL fragments to flush the receiver.
- 6** Type `enabled`. Otherwise leave this option `DISABLED` (the default value).  
*The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Omit encapsulation for single link <ENABLED or
DISABLED> (disabled):
```
- If you set this option to `DISABLED`, PPP Multilink operates as normal. This means that each packet contains a multilink header, no matter how many links are open.
- 7** Set this option to `ENABLED` if you wish to omit multilink headers when only one link (the primary link) is open.
When the secondary link closes, packets retain headers for the purpose of synchronization before dropping them. This makes the packets smaller so that there is less data to send.
The following display shows the configuration you have set up:
- ```
Circuit updated:

Circuit name : boston
Fragment packets : enabled
Minimum size of packet to fragment : 256
Generate NULL fragments : disabled
Omit encapsulation for single link : disabled
```

Network interface sub-context commands  
**multilink (m)** (continued)

---

**Displaying the PPP Multilink configuration details**

To display the multilink configuration, enter `network isdn2 multilink show`.

A display similar to the following appears:

| Name     | Fragment<br>Packets | Fragment<br>Size | NULL<br>Fragment | Suppress<br>Headers |
|----------|---------------------|------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| ISDN     | n/a                 | n/a              | n/a              | n/a                 |
| admin    | enabled             | 256              | enabled          | enabled             |
| default  | enabled             | 256              | enabled          | enabled             |
| listener | n/a                 | n/a              | n/a              | n/a                 |
| nil      | enabled             | 256              | enabled          | enabled             |

## Network interface sub-context commands

**ppp (pp)**

---

**Command purpose**

The `network isdn2 ppp` command is used to

- monitor the quality of throughput on a link, through the Link Quality Monitoring (LQM) function
- configure counters and timers used by PPP to maintain the integrity of negotiation sequences

**Link Quality Monitoring Functions**

The LQM function periodically sends packets to the target router, to check that the link is functioning correctly. You can enable or disable it.

You do not need to enable LQM. An ISDN line provides better quality communications than a standard leased line. You only pay for the time during which you use it. So LQM is probably redundant, and you can keep costs down by only using it when necessary.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `ppp` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 ppp [show]
```

**Using the command****Configuring PPP**

- 1 To configure PPP, enter `network isdn2 ppp`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Link Quality Management <DISABLED or
ENABLED> (disabled):
```

The default value is `DISABLED`.

- 2 Enable or disable link quality management as required.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Echo request timer in seconds <1 - 10> (1) :
```

Network interface sub-context commands

**ppp (pp)** (continued)

---

- 3** Define how often PPP checks that the link is up.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
Echo frames allowed to be lost <2 - 4> (2) :
- 4** Define the number of frames (or packets) that can be lost before PPP decides that the link is down.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Ignore LCP Number Errors <YES or NO> :
- 5** Enter `no` if you want to ignore PAP authorization acknowledgment identification number errors. This may be required when using Layer 2 Forwarding (L2F) at the remote destination.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
Peer is Shiva Device <YES or NO> :
- 6** Respond as required.  
*The following prompts that appear are all checks on the time taken to negotiate links between the units.*  
Restart Timer in seconds <1-16> (3) :  
Maximum Number of Configure-Requests sent <1-10> (10):  
Maximum Number of Configure-Naks sent <1-5> (5):  
Maximum Number of Terminate-Requests sent <1 or 2> (2):  
You should not change these values, as they are the default values for any router using the standard PPP setup. It is important that they be identical in both the original and target routers.

---

**Network interface sub-context commands**  
**ppp (pp) (continued)**


---

**Displaying PPP configuration details**

To display the Circuit PPP Table for an interface, enter `network isdn2 ppp show`.

A display similar to the following appears:

| Circuit PPP Table |          |                  |                      |                      |                      |              |
|-------------------|----------|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| Name              | LQM      | Restart<br>Timer | Maximum<br>Conf-Reqs | Maximum<br>Conf-Naks | Maximum<br>Term-Reqs | LCP<br>State |
| HQ1               | disabled | 3                | 10                   | 10                   | 1                    | No VC        |
| HQ2               | disabled | 3                | 10                   | 10                   | 1                    | No VC        |
| Ad1               | disabled | 3                | 10                   | 10                   | 1                    | No VC        |
| Ad2               | disabled | 3                | 10                   | 10                   | 1                    | No VC        |

The LCP State refers to the PPP Link Control Protocol which is used to negotiate default values for the following:

- encapsulation format options
- packet sizes
- peer identity authentication
- link quality monitoring

The value in the LCP State field varies, depending on the current state of PPP negotiation on that virtual circuit. Use `ppp show <circuit name>` to see detailed LCP state information.

## Network interface sub-context commands

**rates (rat)**

---

**Command purpose**

The network `isdn2 rates` command provides continuous monitoring of the calls made and received by the router.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `rates` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 rates
```

**Using the command****Setting the rates to monitor calls**

To set rates for continuous monitoring, enter `network isdn2 rates <seconds>` where `<seconds>` is the frequency with which statistics are updated on screen. For example, `network isdn2 rates 5`.

The router responds with a display similar to the following:

```
Continuous monitoring of calls every 5 seconds. Enter
<Ctrl-C> to terminate.
```

| Total | Total | Current | Attempted | Accepted | Rejected | Closed |
|-------|-------|---------|-----------|----------|----------|--------|
| in    | out   | in out  | in out    | in out   | in out   | in out |
| 0     | 10    | 0 1     | 0 0       | 0 0      | 0 0      | 0 0    |
| 0     | 10    | 0 1     | 0 0       | 0 0      | 0 0      | 0 0    |
| 0     | 10    | 0 1     | 0 0       | 0 0      | 0 0      | 0 0    |
| 0     | 10    | 0 1     | 0 0       | 0 0      | 0 0      | 0 0    |

To stop the display, press `<Ctrl-C>`.

For details about calls made to a particular destination, enter `network isdn2 rates`, followed by the destination name or address.

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**rates (rat)** (continued)

---

**Displaying call monitoring information**

For details about calls made on a particular circuit, enter `network isdn2 rates`, followed by the circuit name and number of seconds.

For example, `network isdn2 rates nortel1 5`

You see

Continuous monitoring of VCs every 5 seconds.

Enter <Ctrl-C> to terminate.

```

--- Packets sent --- ---- Packets received ----
VCs Total Pkt Oct Protocol(%) Total Pkt Oct Protocol(%)
sent /s /s IP IPX OSI BR rec'd /s /s IP IPX OSI BR
1 6977 3 1543 100 0 0 0 6907 3 1543 100 0 0 0
1 6993 3 1589 100 0 0 0 6922 3 1543 100 0 0 0
1 7023 3 1543 100 0 0 0 6952 3 1543 100 0 0 0

```

To stop the display, press <Ctrl-C>.

## Network interface sub-context commands

**rejects (rej)**

---

**Command purpose**

The `network isdn2 rejects` command displays information about incoming calls rejected by the router and outgoing calls that the router has failed to make.

Information about rejected incoming calls is particularly useful if you have two routers that cannot communicate across the ISDN WAN, as it shows the address of the station that made the rejected call.

Information displayed about rejected outgoing calls does not include calls made or received using the `isdn2 test` command.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `rejects` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 rejects in
```

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 rejects out
```

**Using the command****Displaying rejected incoming calls**

To display a list of rejected incoming calls, enter `network isdn2 rejects in`.

You see

```
 Incoming Rejects
```

| Address    | Failures | Time Since<br>Last Reject | Cause                 |
|------------|----------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 0315549123 | 1        | 13h 28m                   | call rejected         |
| personnel  | 3        | 1h 3m                     | call timed out        |
| listener   | 4        | 2m 10s                    | PAP not authenticated |

## Network interface sub-context commands

### **rejects (rej)** (continued)

---

If the router can make an association between the address used and a circuit name, it uses the circuit name in the display. If it cannot, it displays the address. In this case, you need to check the relevant circuit table and correct the entry.

#### **Displaying rejected outgoing calls**

To display a list of rejected outgoing calls, enter `network isdn2 rejects out`.

The display that appears is very similar to the list of rejected incoming calls.

Check that the ISDN address received in the ISDN Circuit table matches this address. (Use `ip isdn2 association show` command.) If it does not, change the address in the Circuit table. This lets the router accept calls from this address.

Network interface sub-context commands

## security (sec)

---

### Command purpose

When the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) is used on the router, security must also be used. The Password Authentication Protocol (PAP), Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP), and Shiva Password Authentication Protocol (SPAP) are the security mechanisms for PPP.

PAP, CHAP, and SPAP check the identity of a caller, as an alternative to the Calling Line Identification (CLI) feature.

*Note:* Caller ID is the North American equivalent of CLI.

CLI is not always implemented, particularly on international calls. PAP, CHAP, or SPAP can also be used in addition to CLI.

The network `isdn2 security` command is used to enable or disable PAP, CHAP, or SPAP on the router.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `security` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 security
```

### Using the command

#### Enabling security

- 1 To enable PAP, CHAP, or SPAP on the router, enter `network isdn2 security`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit name <Up to 15 characters or *> :
```

- 2 Select the circuit for which you want to activate PAP, CHAP, or SPAP.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Authentication <DISABLED, PAP, CHAP or SPAP> (chap)
:
```

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**security (sec)** (continued)

---

- 3** If authentication is not required, enter DISABLED.  
 To enable authentication, enter PAP, CHAP, or SPAP.  
*The following table identifies where to find instructions for the authentication method you have chosen.*

| For  | See                          |
|------|------------------------------|
| CHAP | "Enabling CHAP" on page 7-57 |
| PAP  | "Enabling PAP" on page 7-58  |
| SPAP | "Enabling SPAP" on page 7-60 |

**Enabling CHAP**

My CHAP Identifying name <up to 48 characters or NONE> (none) :

- 1** Enter an identifying name for the router you are configuring, such as its ISDN address.

**Note:** You must configure the listener circuit's identifying name if you want to use CHAP.

*The router prompts as follows:*

Their CHAP Identifying name <up to 48 characters or NONE> (none) :

- 2** Enter a unique identifying name for the device at the other end of the circuit.

On an ISDN circuit, if you have set the Address Received to NULL, then this prompt appears as not assigned. You must enter an Identifying name. However, if you have entered an ISDN Received Address, the default NONE is an acceptable value.

*The router prompts as follows for shared secrets on both the router (for incoming challenges) and the device at the remote site (for outgoing challenges).*

New shared secret <up to 25 characters or NONE> :  
 Repeat new shared secret <up to 25 characters or NONE> :

Network interface sub-context commands

**security (sec)** (continued)

---

These additional identifiers are actually passwords for the router you are configuring. To be effective, they should differ from the identifying names entered above.

3 Enter the router's secret.

**Note:** The shared secret is not echoed on screen. Be careful to take note of what you have entered here and keep this information in a safe place.

4 Retype the secret to confirm that you have typed it correctly.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 for the remote device's secret.

*The router prompts as follows:*

Simultaneous 2-way Authentication <YES or NO> (no):

6 If you want both incoming and outgoing challenges to be authenticated at the same time, enter YES.

*The new circuit details appear.*

Circuit updated:

```
Circuit name : nortell
Authentication : chap
Use default circuit's configuration : n/a
```

CHAP parameters:

```
My identifying name : 3939
Their identifying name : 2929
Two way authentication : no
```

### Enabling PAP

The same parameter values must be defined in reverse on the router on the other side of the circuit.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
My PAP Peer ID <Up to 48 characters or
NONE> (NONE) :
```

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**security (sec)** (continued)

---

- 1 Enter a Peer ID for the router you are configuring, such as its ISDN address.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  

```
Their PAP Peer ID <up to 48 characters or NONE>
(NONE):
```
- 2 Enter a unique Peer ID for the device at the other end of the circuit.  
On an ISDN circuit, if you have set the Address Received to `NULL`, then this prompt appears as `not assigned`. You must enter a PAP Peer ID. However, if you have entered an ISDN Received Address, the default `NONE` is an acceptable value.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  

```
My PAP Password <Up to 15 characters or
NONE> (NONE) :
```

This is an additional identifier. To be effective, it should differ from the Peer ID.
- 3 Enter a password for the router you are configuring.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  

```
Their PAP Password <Up to 15 characters or NONE>
(NONE):
```
- 4 Enter a PAP password for the device at the other end of the circuit.  
*The new circuit details appear.*  

```
Circuit updated:

Circuit name : triall
Authentication : pap
Use default circuit's configuration : n/a

PAP parameters:
My PAP peer ID : bill
Their PAP peer ID : ted
My PAP password : <none>
Their PAP password : <none>
```

Network interface sub-context commands  
**security (sec)** (continued)

---

**Enabling SPAP**

*The router prompts as follows:*

Return ISDN address <up to 41 digits or NULL>  
NULL) :

- 1 Enter the ISDN directory number of your HomeOffice Router.  
This directory number will be used by the remote device to connect to your HomeOffice Router.

*The router prompts as follows:*

My SPAP Peer ID <Up to 48 characters or NONE>  
(NONE) :

- 2 Enter a Peer ID for the router you are configuring.  
This is the router's ISDN address or the name of the site in which it is located for each circuit.

*The router prompts as follows:*

Their SPAP Peer ID <up to 48 characters or  
NONE> (NONE) :

- 3 Enter a unique Peer ID for the device at the other end of the circuit.

*The router prompts as follows:*

My SPAP Password <up to 16 characters or  
NONE> (NONE) :

- 4 Enter a password for the router you are configuring.  
**Note:** SPAP passwords are encrypted, so they are not echoed on screen.

*The router prompts as follows:*

Repeat new password <up to 16 characters>:

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**security (sec)** (continued)

---

- 5 Type the password again as confirmation.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
 Their SPAP Password <Up to 16 characters or NONE> (NONE):
- 6 Enter a password for the device at the other end of the circuit.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
 Repeat new password <up to 16 characters>:
- 7 Type the password again as confirmation.  
*The new circuit details appear.*  
 Circuit updated:
- ```

Circuit name                : triall
Authentication              : spap
Use default circuit's configuration : n/a

SPAP parameters:
Return ISDN address         :5551234
My SPAP peer ID            : bill
Their PAP peer ID          : ted
  
```

Displaying authentication configuration details

To display the circuit security table, enter `network isdn2 security show`.

A display similar to the following appears:

Circuit Security Table

Circuit	Auth	My Id	Their Id	Warning
admin	pap	SAP100000	<none>	-
default	spap	123		-
listener	all	n/a		-
voice		n/a	n/a	

Network interface sub-context commands
security (sec) (continued)

This shows the circuits that have PAP, CHAP, or SPAP enabled. It also shows details of the listener circuit. The listener circuit is used where there is no Calling Line Identification (CLI). When a router receives a call, the calling address will be seen as NULL if CLI is disabled. The listener circuit is then used to carry out the PPP negotiation until the real circuit is established.

If PAP is in use on your network, the Peer ID is checked against the circuit table at the other end of the network, to see if a circuit is set up for that address.

If CHAP is in use on your network, my identifying name (set in the listener circuit) is checked against the circuit table at the other end of the network, to see if a circuit is set up for that address.

Network interface sub-context commands

statistics (ss)

Command purpose

The `network eth1 statistics` command displays frame and packet statistics for a specific interface.

You can also display rates, discards, and errors, or reset the statistics counter.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `statistics` command is

```
network eth1 statistics <modifier>
```

where <modifier> can be `frames`, `rates`, `discards`, `errors`, `queue`, or `reset`.

Using the command

Displaying transmitted and received frames

To display frames that have been received and transmitted, enter `network eth1 statistics frames`.

A display similar to the following appears:

Network interface sub-context commands

statistics (ss) (continued)

Interface Statistics: eth1

```
Total frames received      : 16487 (100.00%)
  Protocol frames          :    0 ( 0.00%)
  Bridged frames           :   303 ( 1.83%)
  Media control frames     :    0 ( 0.00%)
  Discards                 : 16183 ( 98.15%)
  Errors                   :    1 ( 00.00%)

Total octets received      : 4414470 (avg frame size 267)

Total frames transmitted   :   161 (100.00%)
  Protocol frames          :    0 ( 0.00%)
  Bridged frames           :   158 ( 98.13%)
  Media control frames     :    0 ( 0.00%)
  Discards                 :    3 ( 1.86%)
  Errors                   :    0 ( 0.00%)

Total octets transmitted   :  23166 (avg frame size 146)

Total media transmit errors :    1
```

Displaying transmit and receive rates

To display transmit and receive rates by the router, enter network eth1 statistics rates.

A display similar to the following appears:

Network interface sub-context commands
statistics (ss) (continued)

```

Interface Statistics: eth1

                Peak                               Current
Total received  : 398 pps ( 6m 47s) 83 pps
  Protocol frames :    0 pps          2 pps
  Bridged frames  :    0 pps          1 pps
  Media control   :    0 pps          0 pps
  Discards        : 398 pps ( 6m 47s) 80 pps
  Errors          :    0 pps          0 pps

Receive data rate :88306 bps ( 5m 23s) 105000 bps

Total transmitted :    3 pps ( 17m 34s)  1 pps
  Protocol frames :    0 pps          0 pps
  Bridged frames  :    3 pps ( 17m 34s)  1 pps
  Media control   :    0 pps          0 pps
  Discards        :    0 pps          0 pps
  Errors          :    0 pps          0 pps

Transmit data rate : 3890 bps ( 17m 14s)  916 bps

```

Displaying transmit and receive discards

To display discarded transmissions and receipts, enter `network eth1 statistics discards`.

A display similar to the following appears:

Network interface sub-context commands

statistics (ss) (continued)

Interface Statistics: eth1

Total receive discards	:	31295 (100.00%)
Interface down	:	0 (0.00%)
Unrecognized protocol	:	45 (0.14%)
Filtered dynamically	:	29357 (93.80%)
Filtered statically	:	0 (0.00%)
Port not forwarding	:	1893 (6.04%)
Total transmit discards	:	3 (100.00%)
Interface down	:	2 (66.66%)
Unrecognized protocol	:	0 (0.00%)
Filtered dynamically	:	0 (0.00%)
Filtered statically	:	0 (0.00%)
Port not forwarding	:	1 (33.33%)

Displaying transmit and receive errors

To display transmit and receive errors, enter network eth1
statistics errors

A display similar to the following appears:

Interface Statistics: eth1

Total receive errors	:	5 (100.00%)
Resource	:	5 (0.00%)
Stream	:	0 (0.00%)
Receive	:	0 (0.00%)
Overrun	:	0 (0.00%)
Frame check sequence	:	0 (0.00%)
Total transmit errors	:	0 (0.00%)
Resource	:	0 (0.00%)
Total media transmit errors	:	2
Transmit	:	0
Collision	:	2

Network interface sub-context commands
statistics (ss) (continued)

To display information about the transmit and receive queues on the router, enter `network eth1 statistics queue`.

A display similar to the following appears:

```
Interface Statistics: eth1

Receive queue
  Max Driver buffers      :      100
  Current Driver buffers  :      100 (100.00%)

Transmit queue
  Max Driver buffers      :      50
  Current Driver buffers  :      50 (100.00%)
  Tx queue size (frames) :      0

Interface driver-to-streams queue
  Protocols                : Xerox echo,
  Read queue size          :      0
  Protocols                : Bridge,
  Read queue size          :      0

Bridge driver-to-streams queue
  Protocols                : Spanning Tree, Bridge
  Read queue size          :      0
```

Resetting the statistics counter

To reset the statistics counter, enter `network eth1 statistics reset`.

Network interface sub-context commands

status (st)

Command purpose

The `network <interface> status` command displays information about the physical status of the network connection. It is available on Ethernet and ISDN interfaces.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `status` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network eth1 status
```

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 status
```

Using the command

To display the status of the network connection, enter `network <interface> status`, where `<interface>` is either `eth1` or `isdn2`.

The Ethernet display looks like this:

```
Interface Status:
```

```
Interface number      : 1
  Current State       : up
  Duration            : 17m 1s
  Type                : ethernet
  Variant             : auto
  Bandwidth (bps)    : 10000000
System name           : eth1
  Alias               : local
Requested State       : enabled
```

Network interface sub-context commands

test (te)

Command purpose

The `network isdn2 test` command is used to test

- ISDN without the full configuration procedure
- a configured line that is suspected of being faulty

Loopback test

The first test you should run is the loopback test which verifies

- that the unit can communicate with the ISDN exchange (that is, the cable and interface card are working)
- that the number the telephone company has actually assigned (the ISDN number of the local ISDN connection) and the number you think you have are the same
- whether CLI is installed on your line
If it is, the loopback tests if the exchange inserts any extra digits in the CLI. This may affect how you configure the unit for communication.
- the data path to and from the ISDN exchange
- SPIDs if you are using National ISDN (North America only).

Note: The loopback test is not available on an ISDN line that is provisioned for only one B-channel.

Listening and calling tests

After you have successfully completed the loopback test and are confident that connections and addresses are correct, you can test the ability of two routers to connect over ISDN. Use the `LISTEN` and `CALLING` test options. Set up one unit to listen and the other to call.

Note: You must run this test in co-operation with someone at the other end of the ISDN link. One end of the link is called the Listening Side; the other end is the Calling Side.

Network interface sub-context commands
test (te) (continued)

Reversing the listening and calling tests

Upon completion of the listening and calling tests, reverse the listening and calling states of the routers and run the test again.

Note: It is important to run the test in reverse. Even though the test works in one direction, this does not mean that the numbers are correct in the opposite direction. Most networking protocols require that either end can initiate the call.

If the tests are unsuccessful, do the following:

- Try the loopback test again.
- Contact the telephone company and check that you are using the correct area codes at both ends.

Command syntax

The syntax of the `test` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 test
```

Using the command

Performing a loopback test

- 1 To run a loopback test, enter `network isdn2 test`.

The router responds as follows:

```
Entering TEST mode on ISDN interface:  
(CTRL-C to exit)
```

```
Select test mode <LISTEN, CALLING or  
LOOPBACK> (loopback) :
```

Network interface sub-context commands
test (te) (continued)

- 2** Select `loopback`.
- This is the default (shown in parentheses), so you only need to press <Enter>.
- The router prompts you for the following:*
- ```
ISDN address to dial this interface <up to 41
digits> (NULL):
```
- Note:** The default value is NULL, or the number that you entered for this unit using the `install` command or the `network isdn2 address` command. In most cases, you will not want to change a number that you have previously entered.
- If you wish to test a sub-address, you can add it here.
- 3** Enter the ISDN interface address, then a hyphen followed by the sub-address number.
- For example, if the number you want the router to listen for is 0123 555 2001, with a sub-address of 2, you would do the following:
- Enter it as an ISDN interface address. For example, 01235552001.
  - Enter a hyphen and a digit as a sub-address. For example, -2. The complete address is 01235552001-2.  
  
By adding the last digit after the sub-address separator (hyphen), you tell the router what sub-address digit to listen for in incoming calls. Sub-addresses can be more than one digit.
  - Press <Enter>.
- The router reports the ISDN calls it sees coming in, not going out. If it sees nothing, it reports that the loopback test has failed. If the router receives a call, but does not recognize that this call was its own call to itself, the test fails. The following describes the possible reasons for this failure.*

Network interface sub-context commands  
**test (te)** (continued)

---

**Loopback test failure**

The possible reasons for failure are:

- The ISDN network has not identified the router because Calling Line Identification (CLI) is not supported on your network. If this is the case, you will get the result `Incoming Call from NULL`. You should use the `install` command to configure circuits with `NULL CLI`, and use `PAP` or `CHAP` to identify the calling unit, or use `net isdn2 circuit change` and `net isdn2 security`.
- The ISDN network has identified the router incorrectly because the ISDN network has added an area code prefix to the number. For example, you will get the result `Incoming Call from 0101234567890`. In this case, retry the test. At the `Network Identification Address` prompt, you should enter the full number, including the prefix, as reported by the loopback test.
- Another user tried to call you as you were carrying out the loopback call and nullified the test. You should repeat the test.

**Troubleshooting the loopback test**

If the loopback test fails for any other reason, you should check

- the ISDN cable
- the ISDN interface  
Enter `status` to make sure it is up. If it is not, check it using the `top fault` command.
- the ISDN number  
To do this, contact your ISDN supplier.
- the ACT LED on the ISDN interface card  
If this does not shine green, then the ISDN link to the network is down. This may be due to a problem with either the cable, the router, or the ISDN exchange. It indicates that the problem is not simply a numbering one.

---

**Network interface sub-context commands**  
**test (te)** (continued)

---

**Performing Listening and calling tests**

At the listening side, do the following:

- 1 Go into the network `isdn2` context and type `network isdn2 test`.

*The router prompts with the following:*

```
Entering TEST mode on ISDN interface: <CTRL-C to
exit>
```

```
Select test mode <LISTEN, CALLING or LOOPBACK>
(loopback):
```

- 2 To check that the router can receive calls, type `listen`.

*The router prompts with the following:*

```
ISDN directory number of this interface <up to 41
digits> (1234567890):
```

- 3 Select the default by pressing <Enter>.

The default is the address set up in the `isdn2 address` command. However, any address can be used here. If you wish to test a sub-address, enter that address.

```
Automatically Accept All incoming calls <MANUAL or
AUTO> (auto):
```

**Note:** If you select `AUTO` (the default value), the router accepts all calls. If you select `MANUAL`, the router asks if you want to accept specific calls.

```
Listening for incoming calls
```

**Note:** The router indicates that it is in a listening state, adding a dot to the line every four seconds.

At the calling side, do the following:

- 4 On the router at the other end of the ISDN link, type `network isdn2 test`.

- 5 Select the `CALLING` test option.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
ISDN number to call <up to 41 digits>:
```

- 6 Enter the ISDN address of the listening unit and press <Enter>.

Network interface sub-context commands

**test (te)** (continued)

---

**Effects at the listening side**

If you have elected to accept incoming calls manually, the router at the listening end asks if you want to accept a specific call in the following way:

```
Call received from 1234567890.
Accept this incoming call <NO or YES> :
```

If you have elected to accept incoming calls automatically, you will see the following:

```
Call received from 1234567890.
Automatically accepting call

Incoming call state : LISTENING -> ACCEPTING
Incoming call state : ACCEPTING -> ESTABLISHED
Message received: This message was sent on the
B-channel
```

The call is closed automatically once the test message has been received.

```
Incoming call state: ESTABLISHED -> LISTENING
Listening for incoming calls
```

The listening router indicates that it is again in a listening state, adding a dot to the line every four seconds.

**Effects at the calling side**

The calling unit displays the following if the test is successful:

```
Outgoing calling state: ATTEMPTING -> CONNECTING
Outgoing calling state: CONNECTING -> ESTABLISHED
```

```
Call connection was successful.
```

If the test is unsuccessful, press <Ctrl-C> to exit and then retry the test.

## Network interface sub-context commands

**timer (ti)**

---

**Command purpose**

The `network isdn2 timer` command is used to define the intervals at which the router attempts to back up or open an ISDN circuit that is down.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `timer` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 timer
```

**Using the command**

- 1 To configure the timers, enter `network isdn2 timer`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit name <up to 15 Characters or *> :
```
- 2 Enter the name of the circuit for which you want to configure the timer.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Use default circuit's configuration <YES or NO>
(yes) :
```
- 3 Press <Enter> if you want your circuit to use the configuration of the default circuit.

No further prompts appear if you choose to adopt the default circuit's configuration.

*The router prompts you to enter the backup timer retry method.*

```
Backup timer retry method <EXPONENTIAL, LONG or
SHORT> (exponential) :
```

## Network interface sub-context commands

**timer (ti)** (continued)

---

The options are described in the following table:

| Retry method | Description                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Exponential  | This sets the timer to retry at the short interval (30 seconds) for a few attempts. This interval is increased until it reaches the long interval (1200 seconds). |
| Long         | This sets the timer to repeat attempts to open a circuit at intervals of 1200 seconds.                                                                            |
| Short        | This sets the timer to repeat attempts to open a circuit at intervals of 30 seconds.                                                                              |

**4** Select the retry method.

*The router prompts you to enter the circuit down timer retry method.*

```
Circuit down timer retry method <EXPONENTIAL, LONG
or SHORT> (exponential) :
```

*The new values appear.*

Circuit updated:

```
Circuit name : trialcil
Backup timer retry method : long
Circuit down timer retry method : exponential
Use default circuits configuration : disabled
```

## Network interface sub-context commands

**tune (tu)****Command purpose**

The `network isdn2 tune` command lets you change circuit parameters on an individual basis. It is available in `isdn2` sub-contexts.

*Note:* You must set Bandwidth-on-demand criteria for increasing and decreasing bandwidth at both ends of a link.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `tune` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 tune
```

**Using the command**

- 1 To change circuit parameters on an ISDN interface, enter `network isdn2 tune`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit name <up to 15 characters or *> :
```

- 2 Select the circuit you want to tune.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Use default circuit's configuration <YES or NO>
(yes) :
```

- 3 Press <Enter> if you want your circuit to use the configuration of the default circuit.

No further prompts appear if you choose to adopt the default circuit's configuration.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit mode <PERMANENT or DEMAND> (demand) :
```

- 4 Select the circuit mode.

You should normally select `DEMAND`. `PERMANENT` keeps the link open all the time and prevents it from being preempted. Only select it if you have arranged with your telephone company to be on an appropriate ISDN Tariff.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit priority <HIGH, MEDIUM or LOW> (low) :
```

Network interface sub-context commands

**tune (tu)** (continued)

---

- 5** Define whether calls on this circuit have a HIGH, MEDIUM, or LOW priority.
- If all resources are in use, a call can pre-empt another call that has a lower priority. If there is more than one call with the same priority, the call with the timer closest to expiring is pre-empted. (If priorities are equal, see the `Guaranteed call time in seconds` prompt.)
- The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Minimum call timer in seconds <0 - 3600> (10) :
```
- 6** Define the minimum time, in seconds, that you want the specified circuit to be kept open.
- You should set this to just less than the length of time of the minimum call unit set by your telephone company. This means that the circuit is configured to be kept open for at least the minimum time for which you are paying.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- ```
Call idle timer in seconds <2 - 3600 or INFINITY> (10) :
```
- 7** Define how long a connection can remain idle before the router closes it down.
- Change this if you don't want to use the default value that you set using the `timer` command. Set a value between 1 and 3600 seconds, or `INFINITY`. If you choose `INFINITY`, connections on this circuit will never time out.
- Setting the value for the connection idle timer too low, especially on links with long connection setup times, can result in a connection always timing out before it is properly established.

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**tune (tu)** (continued)

---

*The router responds as follows:*

| If the circuit is        | Then                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a PBX circuit (Meridian) | no further prompts appear. Instead the updated circuit details appear.                                                                                        |
| a voice or data circuit  | the following and additional prompts appear:<br><br>Pre-emption timer in seconds <1-43200 or INFINITY> (60):<br><br>Continue with the rest of this procedure. |

- 8** Define how long a connection can be open before it can be pre-empted by another call, unless the other call has a higher priority. If you enter `infinity`, the connection can never be pre-empted other than by a call with a higher priority.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Max. number of virtual circuits <1 or 2> (1):
```

- 9** Define the maximum number of virtual circuits that this circuit can carry.

This lets you use more than one virtual circuit to reach a destination, which can improve line use. If you do this, call prioritization may not work as described above.

**Note 1:** When you are using one virtual circuit per destination, a call can only pre-empt another if it has a higher priority.

**Note 2:** When you are using multiple virtual circuits, the effective priority is lowered to stop calls to a particular destination from monopolizing resources. For example, a low priority call can pre-empt one of the virtual circuits being used by a medium priority call, if the medium priority call is using two or three virtual circuits.

If all available logical channels are in use, incoming calls cannot pre-empt them because the network does not forward the call request to the router. Outgoing calls can pre-empt one circuit at a time.

Network interface sub-context commands

**tune (tu)** (continued)

---

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Circuit Usage Thresholds -SNMP trap if exceeds
 Max single call length in minutes <1 - 9999 or
 INFINITY> (180) :
```

This lets you set a maximum limit for the length of an ISDN call (in minutes). If this limit is exceeded, an SNMP trap is sent.

- 10** Enter the number of minutes to which ISDN calls are limited.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Max daily percentage of available bandwidth
<1 - 99 or INFINITY> (35) :
```

This lets you set a maximum daily percentage of available bandwidth to be used for calls. The value you set for this should take into account the number of virtual circuits you have available. For example, if you have two virtual circuits open, they trigger a trap when they have been open for half of the percentage specified here. If this percentage is exceeded, an SNMP trap is sent.

**Note:** The above prompts only set the limits at which you are warned about excessive use of bandwidth, if you enable the relevant SNMP traps using the `traps` command. They do not alter the configuration being used.

The traps for both these thresholds can be enabled using the `snmp traps` command.

- 11** Enter a percentage to which daily bandwidth is limited.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Bandwidth on Demand - Criteria for increasing
bandwidth
Bandwidth on Demand management <CALLER or BOTH>
(both):
```

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**tune (tu)** (continued)

---

12 Do the following:

| If                                                  | Then                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| you are using two routers                           | both ends of the link should use the same setting. |
| you are interoperating with another vendor's device | select CALLER.                                     |

*The router prompts as follows:*

Increase bandwidth on traffic burst <YES  
or NO> (yes):

13 Respond as required.

| If                                        | Then                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| you enter <code>yes</code> at this prompt | a new virtual circuit is opened and data is transferred onto it if a sudden burst of data occurs. |
| you enter <code>no</code>                 | data transmission remains only on the existing virtual circuit during a sudden burst.             |

*The router prompts as follows:*

Increase bandwidth on sustained traffic load <YES  
or NO> (yes) :

## Network interface sub-context commands

**tune (tu)** (continued)

- 14 Respond as required.

| If                         | Then                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| you enter <code>yes</code> | an additional virtual circuit is opened and data is transferred onto it when the volume of data on the existing virtual circuit exceeds the threshold value for a set length of time. |
| you enter <code>no</code>  | data transmission remains on the existing virtual circuit.                                                                                                                            |

**Note:** You must answer `yes` to at least one of the previous two prompts, otherwise the secondary circuit will never be opened.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Traffic load percentage <0 - 100> (80) :
```

This prompt appears only if you answered `yes` to the Increase bandwidth on sustained traffic load prompt. When data transmission on the existing virtual circuit reaches this level and remains there for the specified time (see following prompt), additional virtual circuits open for data.

- 15 Enter the traffic load percentage.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Required load duration in seconds <5 - 60> (5) :
```

This prompt appears only if you answered `yes` to the Increase bandwidth on sustained traffic load prompt.

- 16 Define the length of time for which data must reach (or exceed) the traffic load percentage value.

For example, when using the default values, the secondary circuit is opened up once traffic on the primary circuit has remained at or above the threshold of 80% for five seconds.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Threshold for decreasing bandwidth
```

```
Traffic load percentage <0 - 40> (30) :
```

---

Network interface sub-context commands  
**tune (tu)** (continued)

---

- 17** Enter the traffic load percentage.
- When data transmission on the existing virtual circuit falls below this level for a sustained length of time (see following prompt), the number of virtual circuits is reduced.
- The router prompts as follows:*
- Required load duration in seconds <5 - 60> (10) :
- This is the length of time for which data must fall below the traffic load percentage value. For example, if you keep the default values, the secondary circuit automatically closes down when its data levels have fallen below the threshold of 30% for 10 seconds.
- 18** Enter the load duration in seconds.
- The new details of the circuit appear.*

**Displaying circuit configuration details**

To display the circuit parameters, enter `network isdn2 tune show`.

The display similar to the following appears:

| Circuit Tuning Table |          |               |               |                   |     |              |                |         |
|----------------------|----------|---------------|---------------|-------------------|-----|--------------|----------------|---------|
| Name                 | Priority | Call<br>Timer | Idle<br>Timer | Pre-empt<br>Timer | VCs | BOD<br>Burst | BOD<br>Sustain | Warning |
| Dallas               | low      | 90            | 60            | 90                | 1   | yes          | yes            | -       |
| Meridian             | high     | 90            | 60            | -                 | 1   | -            | -              | -       |
| default              | low      | 10            | 10            | 60                | 1   | yes          | yes            | -       |
| listener             | low      | 10            | 10            | 60                | 1   | yes          | yes            | -       |
| voice                | high     | -             | -             | -                 | 2   | -            | -              | -       |

**Note:** If a warning is shown, enter `tune show <circuit name>` for more information.

## Network interface sub-context commands

**vcs (v)**

---

**Command purpose**

The `network isdn2 vcs` command is used to display general statistics about the router's virtual circuits. It is available in all `isdn2` sub-contexts.

**Command syntax**

The syntax of the `vcs` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: network isdn2 vcs
```

**Using the command**

To display statistics about virtual circuits, enter `network isdn2 vcs`.

A display similar to the following appears:

```
WAN VC Statistics
```

| Remote<br>router | VC | Call State   | Duration | Packets<br>in | Packets<br>out |
|------------------|----|--------------|----------|---------------|----------------|
| P integ-1        | 1  | out Transfer | 32m 50s  | 5919          | 5973           |
| =>integ-2        | 3  | out Transfer | 17m 31s  | 3214          | 4123           |

All of the statistics given apply to calls the router is currently making. There is one line for each virtual circuit in operation.

**Displaying statistics for a specific circuit**

To display more details about calls to a particular destination, enter `network isdn2 vcs` followed by the circuit name.

A display similar to the following appears:

| VC      | Call | State            | Duration | T/O idle(s)      | T/O Preempt(s) |
|---------|------|------------------|----------|------------------|----------------|
| 1       | out  | Transfer         | 33m5s    | Infinity         | Infinity       |
| VC 1    |      | Transmitted      | rate/s   | Received         | rate/s         |
| Packets |      | 6019             | 3        | 5964             | 3              |
| IP      |      | 6019(100.00%)    | 3        | 5964(100.00%)    | 3              |
| Octets  |      | 3053395          | 538      | 3038356          | 1530           |
| IP      |      | 3053395(100.00%) | 1538     | 3038356(100.00%) | 1530           |

---

## SNMP context shell commands

---

The `snmp` context lets you manage all SNMP functions.

In the `snmp` context, the command prompt is

```
HomeOffice: snmp
```

The following commands are described in this chapter:

| Command   | Shortcut | Description                                        |
|-----------|----------|----------------------------------------------------|
| community | com      | Add, change, delete, or show SNMP community names. |
| manager   | m        | Add, change, delete, or show SNMP managers.        |
| traps     | tra      | Change or show SNMP traps.                         |
| validate  | v        | Validate SNMP managers and communities.            |

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To exit back to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

## community (com)

---

### Command purpose

The SNMP `community` command operates on the SNMP Community table.

A community is a group of central management stations that can all manage the same equipment. In the SNMP protocol, communities are defined. Each community has a community name, which is stored in the Community table.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `community` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: snmp community <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, or `show`.

### Using the command

The router can be managed from any SNMP management station. The Community table acts as a filter on incoming SNMP requests. It contains a list of the communities that are allowed access to manage the router. Each community is given one of two levels of access:

| Access level      | Description                                                                                                           |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>none</code> | Stations in this community have no access to the router.                                                              |
| <code>read</code> | Stations in this community may view the router's parameters and statistics, but they cannot change the configuration. |

**Note:** The Community table only acts as a filter if you switch on filtering. To do this, use the `validate` command.

The router can deal with up to eight communities. By default it has two, called `public` and `private`.

---

**community (com)** (continued)

---

**Adding communities**

- 1 To add an SNMP community to the community table, enter `snmp community add`.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
SNMP community name <up to 16 characters> :
Access permission <NONE or READ> :
```

- 2 Enter the appropriate values for your system.  
For details on how to set up communities, see your management station's documentation.  
Before you set an access permission to `none`, ensure you do not exclude your own management station by mistake.

**Changing communities**

To change a community, enter `snmp community change`.

The prompts are the same as for `community add`. To keep an existing value, press <Enter>.

**Deleting a community**

To delete a community table entry, enter `snmp community delete` followed by the name of the community you want to delete. If you do not specify a community name in the command, the router prompts for one.

The router displays the entry and asks you to confirm that you want to delete it.

```
Community name : beta
Access permission : read
Delete SNMP level entry <YES or NO> :
```

The router does not delete the community until you enter `yes`.

**community (com)** (continued)

---

**Displaying communities**

To display the SNMP community access table, enter `snmp community show`.

The following appears:

SNMP Community Access Table

| Community | Access |
|-----------|--------|
| public    | read   |
| finance   | none   |

## manager (m)

---

### Command purpose

The `snmp manager` command operates on the SNMP Manager table. Assuming that filtering is switched on (using the `validate` command), the Manager table acts as a filter on incoming SNMP requests, so that only management stations in the table can change the router's configuration. Other management stations still have access to statistics and information.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `manager` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: snmp manager <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `add`, `change`, `delete`, or `show`.

### Using the command

#### Adding a manager entry

- 1 To add an entry to the Manager table, enter `snmp manager add`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
SNMP manager <Internet address> :
```

- 2 Enter the Internet address or name of the central management station to which you want to give router access.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Send traps to manager <YES or NO> (yes) :
```

The default value (`yes`) causes the router to forward any SNMP trap messages to the central management station. You can set up traps with the `snmp traps` command. You should only send traps to management stations that can make use of them.

For security reasons, you may not wish to send traps to insecure devices. You may also decide not to send traps to some devices in order to avoid unnecessary network traffic.

- 3 Enter `yes` or `no` as required.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Send syslog messages to manager YES or NO (no) :
```

**manager (m)** (continued)

---

4 Enter `YES` if you want to send trap messages to a syslog daemon.

*The router prompts as follows:*

SNMP Community Name Up to 16 characters (public) :

5 Enter the community name to include in SNMP trap messages.

**Changing a manager entry**

To change an existing entry in the Manager table, enter `snmp manager change`.

The prompts are the same as for `manager add`. To keep the existing value, press `<Enter>`.

You can enter `*` when the router prompts for an Internet address, to display a list of the Internet addresses in the Manager table.

**Deleting a manager entry**

To delete an entry from the Manager table, enter `snmp manager delete` followed by the management station's Internet address.

If you do not enter the management station's Internet address in the command, the router prompts you for it.

The router displays the entry for that address and asks you to confirm that you really want to delete it.

**Displaying manager entries**

To display the Manager table, enter `snmp manager show`.

The following appears:

Snmp Management Station Table

| Manager   | Send Traps | Send Syslog | Community Name |
|-----------|------------|-------------|----------------|
| 31.0.0.11 | yes        | no          | public         |
| 31.0.0.12 | yes        | no          | private        |
| 31.0.0.13 | no         | no          | public         |

**manager (m)** (continued)

---

To display a particular entry, enter its Internet address immediately after the command. For example:

```
snmp manager show 126.5.27.3
```

The router responds as follows:

```
SNMP management station
```

```
SNMP manager : 126.5.27.3
Send traps to manager : yes
Send syslog messages : no
Trap community name : springe
```

## traps (tra)

---

### Command purpose

The `snmp traps` command allows you to specify which events (traps) that occur on the router are reported to the management stations in the router's Manager table. This command works together with the `snmp manager` command.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `traps` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: snmp traps <action>
```

where `<action>` is either `change` or `show`.

### Using the command

#### Changing traps setup

- 1 To change the traps setup in the router, enter `snmp traps change`.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Generic Traps
Cold Start <YES or NO> (Yes) :
```

Generic traps are common to all SNMP devices. They are sent to management stations when the router is powered on.

- 2 To send generic traps to the management station, enter `yes`; otherwise, enter `no`.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Link Down <YES or NO> (No) :
```

- 3 Enter `yes` if you wish to be informed if a link goes down.

This trap applies to Ethernet and Point-to-Point interfaces only.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Link Up <YES or NO> (No) :
```

- 4 Enter `yes` if you wish to be informed if a link comes up.

This trap applies to Ethernet and Point-to-Point interfaces only.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Invalid SNMP Manager Address <YES or NO> (No) :
```

**traps (tra)** (continued)

- This trap is activated when a device uses the wrong SNMP community name to try and talk to the router.
- 5** Enter *yes* if you wish to capture this trap.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
 Enterprise Traps  
     Management Session Started <YES or NO> (No) :  
     Management Session Ended <YES or NO> (No) :
- These traps are specific to Rapport products. They are sent when a management device opens or closes a management session with the router, either locally or remotely using Telnet.
- 6** Enter *yes* if you wish to capture these traps.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
 Bad password <YES or NO> (No) :
- This trap is sent when someone tries to open an administration session using the wrong password.
- 7** Enter *yes* if you wish to capture this trap.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
 Outgoing Call Open <YES or NO> (No) :  
 Outgoing Call Close <YES or NO> (No) :  
 Incoming Call Open <YES or NO> (No) :  
 Incoming Call Close <YES or NO> (No) :
- These traps report the opening or closing of ISDN calls to the management stations in the router's Manager table.
- 8** Enter *yes* if you wish to capture these traps.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
 Outgoing Call - Max Duration <YES or NO> (No) :  
 Incoming Call - Max Duration <YES or NO> (No) :
- These traps report if the specified upper time limit for an incoming or outgoing ISDN call has been exceeded. (The value at which this trap is triggered is set using the `tune` command in the `network` context.)
- 9** Enter *yes* if you wish to capture these traps.  
*The router responds as follows:*  
 Bandwidth Usage Limit Exceeded <YES or NO> (No) :

**traps (tra)** (continued)

This trap reports if the specified percentage of day allocated for available ISDN bandwidth to be used is exceeded. (The value at which this trap is triggered is set using the `tune` command in the network context.)

- 10** Enter `yes` if you wish to capture this trap.

*The router responds as follows:*

Resource Allocation Failure <YES or NO> (No) :

This trap is sent when the router cannot perform some internal function due to a lack of resource (such as disk/flash space, memory, or streams buffers).

- 11** Enter `yes` if you wish to capture this trap.

**Displaying selected traps**

To display the traps set up in the router, enter `snmp traps show`.

The Traps Table showing which traps are activated appears.

The Enabled column shows which traps are sent to the LAN. This means that the count for a particular kind of trap may increase even if the trap itself is disabled.

The Count shows how often an event has occurred.

SNMP Traps Table

| Description                    | Enabled | Count |
|--------------------------------|---------|-------|
| Cold Start                     | Yes     | 1     |
| Link Down                      | No      | 0     |
| Link Up                        | No      | 0     |
| Invalid SNMP Manager Address   | No      | 0     |
| Management Session Started     | Yes     | 3     |
| Management Session Ended       | Yes     | 3     |
| Bad password                   | Yes     | 1     |
| Outgoing Call Open             | No      | 0     |
| Outgoing Call Close            | No      | 0     |
| Incoming Call Open             | No      | 0     |
| Incoming Call Close            | No      | 0     |
| Outgoing Call - Max Duration   | No      | 0     |
| Incoming Call - Max Duration   | No      | 0     |
| Bandwidth Usage Limit Exceeded | No      | 0     |
| Resource Allocation Failure    | No      | 0     |

## validate (v)

### Command purpose

The `snmp validate` command enables and disables the filtering of incoming SNMP requests, using the Community and Manager tables.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `validate` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: snmp validate [show]
```

### Using the command

#### Enabling validation filtering

- 1 To enable filtering, enter `snmp validate`.

*The router responds as follows:*

```
Change validation <MANAGER or COMMUNITY> :
```

- 2 Select the type of validation required.

| If you select | Then                                                                                                                           |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| manager       | <i>the router prompts as follows:</i><br>Validate SNMP requests against managers <ON or OFF> (off):<br>Respond as required.    |
| community     | <i>the router prompts as follows:</i><br>Validate SNMP requests against communities <ON or OFF> (off):<br>Respond as required. |

#### Displaying the validation setup

To display the current validation setup, enter `snmp validate show`.

```
Validation of SNMP requests:
```

```
Validate managers : off
Validate communities : on
```



---

## System context shell commands

---

In the `system` context you can use commands to set up various parameters that affect the way your local display works.

In the `system` context, the command prompt is

```
HomeOffice: system
```

The following commands are described in this section:

| Command       | Shortcut | Description                                                         |
|---------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| backup        | b        | Copies the current configuration.                                   |
| configuration | conf     | Generates a summary of the unit configuration.                      |
| edit          | e        | Alters the command recall facility.                                 |
| isdn          | i        | Selects the switch at the telephone company end of your connection. |
| more          | m        | Enables or disables the pager <code>more</code> .                   |
| password      | pa       | Changes the password for access to privileged commands.             |
| prompt        | prom     | Defines the privileged level prompt.                                |
| protocols     | prot     | Enables or disables a protocol.                                     |
| reset         | rst      | Returns the configuration to factory default values.                |
| —continued—   |          |                                                                     |

| <b>Command</b> | <b>Shortcut</b> | <b>Description</b>                                              |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| restore        | r               | Restores a copy of saved configuration.                         |
| save           | sa              | Saves the router's configuration.                               |
| security       | se              | Encrypts sensitive stored information.                          |
| signon         | si              | Defines the sign-on message.                                    |
| statistics     | ss              | Displays buffer and restart statistics.                         |
| store          | st              | Retrieves statistics on the non-volatile memory of your router. |
| timeout        | ti              | Specifies the command interface timeout.                        |
| trace          | tra             | Generates debug-like outputs for technical support personnel.   |
| upgrade        | upg             | Upgrades the unit's software from a TFTP server on the network. |
| version        | v               | Displays information about this version of the router.          |
| warnings       | w               | Shows all the warning messages.                                 |

To display a list of available commands, enter `help`. To exit to non-privileged level, enter `quit`.

---

## backup (b)

---

### Command purpose

The `system backup` command allows you to make a copy of the current configuration to a remote TFTP host over the WAN or LAN.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `backup` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system backup
```

### Using the command

- 1 To create a copy of the configuration file, enter `system backup`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Host <Internet address> :
```

- 2 Enter the Internet address of the TFTP server to which you are copying the configuration.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Remote file name :
```

- 3 Enter a remote file name.

This is the name of the file that contains the configuration details of the router.

*Any configuration that has changed is saved. A message then indicates that the configuration is being copied:*

```
Saving changed configuration.
```

```
Copying config to 139.76.45.33:hosave.cfg
```

```
.....125K
```

```
.....256K
```

```
.....354K
```

```
.....516K
```

```
566864 octets transferred
```

```
File copied successfully in 28 seconds
```

## configuration (conf)

---

### Command purpose

The `system configuration` command generates a comprehensive summary of the router's configuration.

The summary includes details of interface types and configurations, and circuit information, depending on how your router is set up.

*Note:* This command provides useful information for technical support if you have a problem with the router. The configuration summary is also useful for your own reference.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `configuration` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system configuration
```

### Using the command

To display the router's configuration, enter `system configuration`.

To produce a more extensive display that includes dynamic information, enter `system configuration verbose`.

The following example shows a portion of a configuration summary:

```
 Configuration Summary

 ----- Unit wide configuration -----
system version

Product name : HomeOffice Router
Serial number : NNTM420Y100554
Software version : 2.1.1 NT (12 May 1998)
MC68360 CPU rev : C
ISDN variant : S/T-ISDN
Time running : 53m 40s
Interfaces : eth1 isdn2
Protocols : bridge ip ipx
ISDN Software Version:
SpiderISDN V2.00.01[160], National ISDN 1 (North America)
```

## edit (e)

---

### Command purpose

The `system edit` command allows you to alter the command recall facility.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `edit` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system edit
```

### Using the command

- 1 To define the command recall capabilities of the router, enter `system edit`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Command line editing mode <NONE, FULL or
VT100> (full):
```

- 2 Do the following:

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| none   | With this option, you cannot access previous commands that you have typed.                                                                                                            |
| full   | This option allows you to use either the arrow keys or control characters to recall commands.                                                                                         |
| VT100  | With this option, you can use the arrow keys to see previous command lines, but you cannot use control keys.<br><br>You should choose this option if you are a Windows95 Telnet user. |

## isdn (i)

---

### Command purpose

The `system isdn` command lets you configure the router with details about the ISDN service provided by your telephone company.

*Note:* This command is not available if your unit has been factory configured to NTT (Japanese) ISDN.

Release 2.0 introduces the auto-detect feature that determines the type of switch being used by the telephone company. If you choose a North American switch type, auto-switch detection is enabled. You can use the auto-detect detection to show whether you have selected the correct switch type.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `isdn` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system isdn
```

### Using the command

- 1 To determine the type of ISDN switch used by your service provider, enter `system isdn`.

*When you press <Enter>, the router displays a prompt similar to the following:*

```
ISDN Switch Type <EURO-ISDN, NI-1, NI-2,
ATT-CUSTOM or AUSTEL> (euro-isdn) :
```

- 2 Select the type of switch that you require. For example NI-1.

*The following prompt appears:*

```
ISDN line power detect <YES or NO> (no) :
```

This prompt allows you to activate or deactivate the power detect option. Power detect determines whether the switch you have selected is on or off by detecting whether the switch is sending power down the line.

**isdn (i)** (continued)

3 Do the following:

| If                                                     | Then                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| you have an S/T interface and are connected to an NT-1 | select NO or press <Enter>.                                                                                                                |
| you have a U-interface, or you are not using an NT-1   | consult your telephone company about the type of S/T interface it is providing to determine the phantom power setting.                     |
| your organization is using a PBX                       | contact your network administrator.<br><br>The network administrator should consult the PBX manual to see if power detection is supported. |
| the interface supports power detection                 | select YES at the above prompt.                                                                                                            |

*The changes you have made appear:*

ISDN global configuration:

ISDN Switch Type : National ISDN 1 (North America)

ISDN line power detect : No

ISDN global configuration updated

This change takes effect the next time the unit software is restarted using `top boot`. Restart the unit for these changes to take place.

**isdn (i)** (continued)

---

**Using auto-detect**

To determine if you have selected the correct switch type, you can use auto-detect. The router must be connected to the ISDN line in order for this feature to work. Do the following:

- 1 Ensure you have selected a North American switch type using the `system isdn` command.
- 2 Use the `top boot` command to reboot your unit.  
The router auto-detects the actual switch type and will use this switch type regardless of the setting you have chosen.
- 3 Type `system isdn show` and press <Enter>.  
This command shows your ISDN switch type setting.

*The following appears:*

```
ISDN global configuration:
ISDN Switch Type : National ISDN 1 (North America)
(current : whatever the actual switch type is)
ISDN line power detect : No
```

---

## more (m)

---

### Command purpose

The `system more` command lets you specify whether output will be punctuated by `--MORE--` at suitable intervals.

Generally, `MORE` divides screen output into blocks of 24 lines, but some commands, such as `statistics`, use it to page output into smaller logical chunks.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `more` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system more
```

### Using the command

- 1 To instruct the router to display `--MORE--` when required, enter `system more`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

Page screen output using `more <ON or OFF> (on):`

- 2 Do the following:

| If                                                                                                                           | Then                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| you want the router to display <code>MORE</code> when required                                                               | enter <code>on</code> .<br>This is the default. |
| you do not want the router to display <code>MORE</code> , or if the user interface is being driven by a computer application | enter <code>off</code> .                        |

## password (pa)

---

### Command purpose

The system `password` command changes the password used to enter the administration level.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `password` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system password
```

### Using the command

To change the administration password, enter `system password`.

The router prompts for the new password. This password can be up to 20 characters. Since what you type does not appear on screen, the router prompts for the new password a second time, to confirm that you did not type it incorrectly.

If you do not want a password at the administration level, press <Enter> at the new password prompt.

*Note:* When you change the password, take note of it and store it in a safe place. If you forget the password, contact your technical support representative.

## prompt (prom)

---

### Command purpose

The `system prompt` command changes the prompt message displayed by the router at the privileged level. The prompt can be any message up to 80 characters long.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `prompt` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system prompt [show]
```

### Using the command

#### Changing the prompt

To change the system prompt, enter `system prompt`.

Entering `none` means there is no prompt.

To include a new line in the prompt, use the characters `\n`.

Press <Enter> to keep the default prompt.

#### Displaying the prompt

To display the system prompt, enter `system prompt show`.

## protocols (prot)

---

### Command purpose

The `system protocols` command enables and disables the protocols running on the router.

*Note:* When your router is delivered, the IP and IPX protocols are already enabled.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `protocols` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system protocols
```

### Using the command

#### Enabling or disabling system protocols

- 1 To enable or disable the IP or IPX protocols, enter `system protocols`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Protocols <IP, IPX, SHOW> :
```

- 2 Enter the protocol you want to temporarily disable or re-enable.

*The router displays a prompt similar to the following:*

```
IPX Enabled <YES or NO> (yes) :
```

*When you press <Enter>, you see:*

```
Routing Protocol Information
```

| Protocol | Enabled | Routing |
|----------|---------|---------|
| IP       | Yes     | Yes     |
| IPX      | No      | Yes     |

This change takes effect the next time the unit software is restarted using `top boot`.

In this example, IPX is disabled.

**protocols (prot)** (continued)

---

The following information appears for each protocol:

- **Enabled:** indicates whether or not you have enabled the protocol
- **Routing:** indicates the current state of the protocol and if packets are being transmitted

**Note 1:** To activate the enabled protocol and begin routing with it, leave the admin level (`quit` command) and restart the router.

**Note 2:** Disabled protocols may be bridged on a bridge-only interface or on a bridge-routing interface.

**Displaying the protocol status**

To display the current protocol status, enter `system protocols show`.

The following appears:

```
Routing Protocol Information
```

| Protocol | Enabled | Routing |
|----------|---------|---------|
| IP       | Yes     | Yes     |
| IPX      | Yes     | Yes     |

## reset (rst)

---

### Command purpose

The system `reset` command allows you to remove any configuration you have changed, added, or deleted on your router, and return it to the factory default values.

You may want to use this command because

- you are unsure of the current configuration and want to start again
- you want to move the router to another part of the network or to another site

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `reset` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system reset
```

### Using the command

- 1 To start reconfiguring the router from the beginning, enter `system reset`.

*When you press <Enter>, you see the following warning:*

```
*** WARNING ***
```

```
This will remove all user configuration, and reset
the unit to the factory defaults.
The unit will restart immediately, and take about
15 seconds to boot.
Reset the non-volatile storage <YES or NO> :
```

- 2 If you wish to continue, select `YES`.

*You are warned not to switch off your router until the reset is complete.*

```

DO NOT POWER THE UNIT OFF BEFORE THE SIGN-ON PROMPT REAPPEARS

Resetting non-volatile storage....
```

**reset (rst)** (continued)

---

Within 30 seconds, the router informs you that the reset is complete.

Resetting non-volatile storage... complete.

Restarting HomeOffice Router .....

Rapport HomeOffice Router

You may now begin re-configuring the unit, if necessary.

## restore (r)

---

### Command purpose

The `system restore` command allows you to transfer a configuration from a host to a router.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `restore` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system restore
```

### Using the command

- 1 To copy configuration from a host to the router, enter `system restore`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Host <Internet address> :
```

- 2 Enter the Internet address or host name of the TFTP server from which you are copying the configuration.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Remote file name : hosave.cfg
```

- 3 Enter the remote file name.

This is the name of the file on the host that contains the device's saved configuration details.

The router restarts automatically before the new configuration is activated.

## save (sa)

---

### Command purpose

The `system save` command lets you save the router's configuration. You should use this command only if you are carrying out a software upgrade.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `save` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system save
```

### Using the command

To save the system configuration, enter `system save`.

The router saves the configuration immediately.

## security (se)

---

### Command purpose

The `system security` command encrypts sensitive stored information. You can also use this command to encrypt an entire user configuration. This is especially useful for Internet Service Providers that do not want the user to change the configuration of a device.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `security` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system security
```

### Using the command

- 1 To secure the configuration of the router so that it cannot be changed, enter `system security`.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
New encryption key <up to 15 characters or NONE> :
- 2 Enter your encryption key and keep it in a secure place.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
Encrypt and save current configuration <YES or NO> :
- 3 Enter `no` if you want to decrypt information that was previously encrypted.

## signon (si)

---

### Command purpose

The `system signon` command changes the message displayed when you first enter user level or remote administration.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `signon` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system signon
```

### Using the command

To change the system sign-on prompt, enter `system signon`.

If you enter `none`, there will be no sign-on message. Press <Enter> to leave the sign-on message unchanged.

The sign-on message can be up to 120 characters long. New lines can be included in the sign-on message by using the characters `\n` for a new line.

## statistics (ss)

---

### Command purpose

The `system statistics` command displays buffer, queue, restart, and stream statistics.

*Note:* The `QUEUE`, `MEMORY`, and `STREAM` parameters are normally only used by technical support personnel, and are not documented here.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `statistics` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system statistics [buffer]
```

### Using the command

- 1 To display router statistics, enter `system statistics`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Statistics <BUFFER, MEMORY, QUEUE, or STREAM> :
```

- 2 Enter `buffer`.

*The number of streams buffers being used, and their sizes appear.*

On the router, for example, the display will look similar to the following:

```
 STREAMS buffers
Size Maximum Current Buffers Allocation
(bytes) allocation allocation in use failures
 4 1024 32 10 0
 16 1024 10 4 0
 64 1287 18 8 0
 256 256 19 18 0
 592 64 3 3 0
 1648 128 25 24 0
 2048 4 1 1 0
 driver 50 40 40 0
 headers 3000 126 107 0
Unused memory 252092 bytes (lowest 252092 bytes) in 1 fragments
```

## store (st)

### Command purpose

The `system store` command allows you to retrieve statistics about the non-volatile memory in your router. It also allows you to browse the directory structure on the non-volatile memory.

This command is useful if you experience difficulties and need to provide support engineers with information on the non-volatile memory of your router.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `store` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system store
```

### Using the command

- 1 To retrieve non-volatile memory statistics, enter `system store`.

*The router prompts as follows:*

```
Storage <STATISTICS or DIRECTORY> (statistics) :
```

- 2 Do the following:

| If                                                                                         | Then                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| you want to see how much non-volatile memory is used by the system and user configurations | <p><code>select statistics.</code></p> <p>The router displays the statistics including the amount of free space remaining.</p> <p>Storage statistics:</p> <pre>System   :    524 bytes User     :   18304 bytes Free     :   42608 bytes</pre>                        |
| you want to view information about a particular directory                                  | <p><code>select directory.</code></p> <p>The router prompts for the directory name.</p> <p>Directory to show (/) :</p> <p>Enter the name of the directory you want to view.</p> <p>The router displays a list of all files stored within the non-volatile memory.</p> |

## timeout (ti)

---

### Command purpose

The `system timeout` command lets you specify the length of the command interface time-out when idle. This time-out applies to all commands and to the privileged mode. When the timer expires, you are returned to non-privileged mode.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `timeout` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system timeout [show]
```

### Using the command

#### Defining the time-out value

- 1 To define the command interface time-out value, enter `system timeout`.

*The router prompts for the following:*

```
Command interface timeout in minutes <1-60 or
INFINITY> (2):
```

- 2 Enter the number of minutes in which the timer should expire or enter `infinity`.

The default is two minutes. If you enter `infinity`, the command interface will never time out.

#### Displaying the time-out value

To display the current time-out setting, enter `system timeout show`.

The following appears:

```
Command and parameter prompts will time out after 2
minutes.
```

## trace (tra)

---

### Command purpose

The `system trace` command switches on and off, various debug-like outputs that are generated during the operation of the router. It is designed for use by technical support personnel.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `timeout` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system trace <action>
```

where `<action>` is `enabled` to turn system trace on, or `disabled` to turn system trace off.

### Using the command

#### Displaying the internal buffer

To display the internal buffer, enter `system trace`.

The first screen of information appears. To display more information, do one of the following:

- Press `<space bar>` to display another screen of information.
- Press `<Enter>` to display another line of information.

#### Displaying a continuous stream of trace information

To display a continuous stream of information, enter `system trace continuous`.

To stop, press `<Ctrl-C>`.

#### Displaying trace information for ISDN layers 2 and 3 traffic

To display ISDN layer 2 and layer 3 traffic on the D-channel (in hexadecimal format), enter `system trace isdn enabled`.

To discontinue, enter `system trace isdn disabled`.

**trace (tra)** (continued)

---

**Output sample**

The following is an example of information captured with the system trace continuous command:

```
Continuous Trace information. Enter <Ctrl C> to
interrupt trace.
3 Image number 51 built at Mon Apr 6 14:43:18 BST
1998
4 H/W: HomeOffice Bridge/Router
5 S/W: 2.1H D22 (QA regression) (06 Apr 1998)
6 FFS3 verify: 0 bad sectors
7 available_protocols = 0x3
8 enabled_protocols = 0x3
9 routing_protocols = 0x303
10 U interface found
11 Install Slots
12 Slot 1: ethernet
13 Slot 2: ISDN BRI
14 DISK restore: system, SNMP, INET, IP, IPX,
bridge, network.
15 Virtual I/F 1 is Disabled in Config.
16 DISK restore: complete.
17 start_isdn: interface 1, usnid 0x42 (B) lsnid
0x42 (B)--> S105/S106 analog ports 0x1
18 ---> INFO TC OUT is set for 0x2
19 ---> INFO TC IN is set for 0x4B
20 TUNING 2 ADDRESSES
21 Vox internal initialization.
22 --> Voice port 1 is fitted
23 --> Voice port 2 is missing
24 WHOA!! Open DIGIVOX
25 DIGIVOX OPEN COMPLETE
26 DVOX OPEN
27 DVOX: Initializing Card struct
28 DEVICE 0
29 DVOX OPEN COMPLETE
30 DVOX IOCTL
31 XE register VC stream with digivox
32 --> Send DVOX_REGISTRATION
33 XE->DIGI: 17
34 REGISTERING 0
35 REGISTER CALL CONTROL DEV 0
36 XE reset RDB daughtercard.
37 --> Send DVOX_RESET
38 XE->DIGI: 22
```

---

**trace (tra)** (continued)

---

```
39 DVOX: Resetting DVox
40 UNBLOCKING ACTIVITY TIMER
41 DVOX: CARD RESET 1
42 down: XN_LISTEN (72F8938 0)
43 up: XN_LISTEN (72F8938 72F8698)
44 +++ LINK PBX circuit
45 ARP [arp_str.c :1007] WARN : IOCTL: cmd
46 4DE0, error 19
47 SYSTEM RUNNING (tracing is disabled)
48 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
49 DVOX: RCVD ACK
50 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
51 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
52 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
53 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
54 DVOX: RCVD ACK
55 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
56 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
57 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
58 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
59 DVOX: RCVD ACK
60 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
61 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
62 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
63 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
64 DVOX: RCVD ACK
65 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
66 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
67 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
68 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
69 DVOX: RCVD ACK
70 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
71 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
72 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
73 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
74 DVOX: RCVD ACK
75 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
76 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
77 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
78 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
79 DVOX: RCVD ACK
80 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
81 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
82 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
```

**trace (tra)** (continued)

---

```
83 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
84 DVOX: RCVD ACK
85 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
86 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
87 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
88 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
89 DVOX: RCVD ACK
90 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
91 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
92 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
93 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
94 DVOX: RCVD ACK
95 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
96 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
97 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
98 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
99 DVOX: RCVD ACK
100 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
101 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
102 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
103 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
104 DVOX: RCVD ACK
105 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
106 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
107 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
108 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
109 DVOX: RCVD ACK
110 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
111 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
112 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
113 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
114 DVOX: RCVD ACK
115 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
116 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
117 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
118 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
119 DVOX: RCVD ACK
120 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
121 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
122 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
123 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
124 DVOX: RCVD ACK
125 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
126 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
127 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
128 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
```

---

**trace (tra)** (continued)

---

```
129 DVOX: RCVD ACK
130 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
131 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
132 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
133 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
134 DVOX: RCVD ACK
135 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
136 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
137 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
138 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
139 DVOX: RCVD ACK
140 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
141 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
142 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
143 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
144 DVOX: RCVD ACK
145 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
146 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
147 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
148 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
149 DVOX: RCVD ACK
150 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
151 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
152 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
153 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
154 DVOX: RCVD ACK
155 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
156 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
157 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
158 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
159 DVOX: RCVD ACK
160 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
161 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
162 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
163 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
164 DVOX: RCVD ACK
165 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
166 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
167 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
168 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
169 DVOX: RCVD ACK
170 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
171 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
172 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
173 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
174 DVOX: RCVD ACK
```

**trace (tra)** (continued)

---

```
175 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
176 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
177 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
178 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
179 DVOX: RCVD ACK
180 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
181 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
182 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
183 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
184 DVOX: RCVD ACK
185 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
186 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
187 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
188 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
189 DVOX: RCVD ACK
190 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
191 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
192 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
193 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
194 DVOX: RCVD ACK
195 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
196 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
197 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
198 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
199 DVOX: RCVD ACK
200 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
201 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
202 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
203 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
204 DVOX: RCVD ACK
205 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
206 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
207 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
208 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
209 DVOX: RCVD ACK
210 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
211 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
212 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
213 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
214 DVOX: RCVD ACK
215 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
216 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
217 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
218 DVOX: RCVD OUT_LOCAL
219 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
220 --> Got DVOX_OUTGOING
```

---

**trace (tra)** (continued)

---

```
221 - Look for an idle VC:
222 -- Found one!
223 -- Found one!
224 0 0:23:37 isdn2 Meridian Call out
handset lifted
225 XN_CONNECT from XE:
226 ... From 2513840
227 ... To NULL
228 ... Layer 1 0x2
229 ==> PBX (Local)
XE_PSM_IDLE--->XE_PSM_CONNECTING
230 down: XN_CONNECT (72F89F8 0)
231 up: XN_SETUPACK (72F89F8 72F85D8)
232 up: XN_CACTIVE (72F89F8 72F85D8)
233 XN_CACTIVE - accept call on B1
234 ---> Route outgoing PBX call to B1 - 0x40 => 56k.
235 ... TDM route B1 Digivox - REWRITE
236 Assuming ISDN B-Channel B1
237 -> Connect PBX (local) to B1
238 --> Outgoing local call.
239 --> Send DVOX_CON_B
240 XE->DIGI: 6
241 XE->DIGI: CON_B 3
242 BLOCKING ACTIVITY TIMER
243 DVOX: TX DIALTONE DL 1 : QU 0
244 DVOX: RCVD ACK
245 ACK FOR DIALTONE
246 DVOX: RCVD DIAL_DIGIT
247 --> Got DVOX_DIGIT
248 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
249 down: XN_INFO (72F89F8 72F85D8)
250 DVOX: RCVD DIAL_DIGIT
251 --> Got DVOX_DIGIT
252 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
253 down: XN_INFO (72F89F8 72F85D8)
254 DVOX: RCVD DIAL_DIGIT
255 --> Got DVOX_DIGIT
256 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
257 down: XN_INFO (72F89F8 72F85D8)
258 DVOX: RCVD DIAL_DIGIT
259 --> Got DVOX_DIGIT
260 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
261 down: XN_INFO (72F89F8 72F85D8)
262 DVOX: RCVD DIAL_DIGIT
263 --> Got DVOX_DIGIT
264 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
```

**trace (tra)** (continued)

```
265 down: XN_INFO (72F89F8 72F85D8)
266 up: XN_ALERTING (72F89F8 72F85D8)
267 xxx Circuit not voice - do not check for
handsfree alert
268 DVOX: RCVD TERMINATE_CALL
269 TERM STATE 5
270 --> Got DVOX_HANGUP
271 ==> PBX (Local)
XE_PSM_CONNECTING--->XE_PSM_CLOSING
272 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
273 UNBLOCKING ACTIVITY TIMER
274 down: XN_DISCONN (72F89F8 72F85D8)
275 up: XN_CONNEND (72F89F8 72F85D8)
276 PBX call closing [CONNEND]
277 ISDN cause: 0x10
278 ISDN diag : 0x0
279 -> Disconnect PBX (local) from B1
280 --> Send DVOX_DIS_B
281 XE->DIGI: 8
282 XE->DIGI: DIS_B
283 UNBLOCKING ACTIVITY TIMER
284 Relinquishing ISDN B-Channel B1
285 BRINGUP 2
286 ... TDM route B1 64kbps Data - REWRITE
287 0 0:23:44 isdn2 Meridian Call out idle
288 ==> PBX (Local) XE_PSM_CLOSING--->XE_PSM_IDLE
289 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
290 DVOX: RCVD ACK
291 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
292 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
293 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
294 DVOX: RCVD ON_OFF_LINE
295 RECV ON_OFF LINE
296 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
297 --> Got DVOX_ON_LINE
298 PBX circuit permanent connection disabled.
299 - Look for an idle VC:
300 -- Found one!
301 -- Found one!
302 0 0:23:47 isdn2 Meridian Call out
handset lifted
303 XN_CONNECT from XE:
304 ... From 2513840
305 ... To 3311
306 ... Layer 1 0x0
```

**trace (tra)** (continued)

```

307 ==> PBX (Online)
XE_PSM_IDLE--->XE_PSM_CONNECTING
308 down: XN_CONNECT (72F89F8 0)
309 DVOX: RCVD OUTGOING_CALL
310 RECEIVED RDB_OUTGOING_CALL COMMAND
311 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
312 --> Got DVOX_OUTGOING
313 --> Send DVOX_CON_B
314 XE->DIGI: 6
315 XE->DIGI: CON_B 8
316 BLOCKING ACTIVITY TIMER
317 DVOX: TX OUTGOING_CALL DL 0 : QU 0
318 DVOX: RCVD ACK
319 ACK FOR OUTGOING_CALL
320 up: XN_ALERTING (72F89F8 72F85D8)
321 xxx Circuit not voice - do not check for
handsfree alert
322 up: XN_CONNACK (72F89F8 72F85D8)
323 up: XN_CACTIVE (72F89F8 72F85D8)
324 XN_CACTIVE - accept call on B1
325 ----> Route outgoing PBX call to B1 - 0x40 => 56k.
326 ... TDM route B1 Digivox - REWRITE
327 Assuming ISDN B-Channel B1
328 -> Connect PBX (on-line) to B1
329 --> Outgoing on-line call.
330 ==> PBX (Online)
XE_PSM_CONNECTING--->XE_PSM_ENGAGED
331 --> Send DVOX_CON_B
332 XE->DIGI: 6
333 XE->DIGI: CON_B B
334 No ACTION taken on DVOC_CON_B, in state 11
335 ... PBX online call timer settings
336 0 0:23:48 isdn2 Meridian Call out
connected
337 DVOX: RCVD TERMINATE_CALL
338 TERM STATE 11
339 --> Got DVOX_HANGUP
340 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
341 xxx Hookfault 0x0
342 xe_encap_voice_in msg 1 (OFF-HOOK)
343 V1 LIFT (XE_VSM_IDLE)
344 ... Call Out via 0x72310AC
345 - Look for an idle VC:
346 -- Found one!
347 0 0:23:59 isdn2 Fax Call out
handset lifted

```

---

**trace (tra)** (continued)

---

```
348 XN_CONNECT from XE:
349 ... From 2513740
350 ... To NULL
351 ... Layer 1 0x2
352 ==> V1 XE_VSM_IDLE--->XE_VSM_HK_OFF_WAIT
353 down: XN_CONNECT (72F8AB8 0)
354 up: XN_CONNEND (72F8AB8 72F8458)
355 0 0:23:59 isdn2 Fax Call out
rejected
356 0 0:23:59 isdn2 Fax Reject cause
100 (Invalid information element contents.)
357 ... TDM route B2 64kbps Data - leave alone
358 V1 CLEAR (XE_VSM_HK_OFF_WAIT)
359 ==> V1 XE_VSM_HK_OFF_WAIT--->XE_VSM_HK_OFF_IDLE
360 0 0:23:59 isdn2 Fax Call out idle
361 xxx PBX connection idle.
362 0 0:24: 0 isdn2 Meridian Call out
stop (idle timer)
363 down: XN_DISCONN (72F89F8 72F85D8)
364 up: XN_CONNEND (72F89F8 72F85D8)
365 PBX call closing [CONNEND]
366 ISDN cause: 0x10
367 ISDN diag : 0x0
368 ==> PBX (Online)
XE_PSM_ENGAGED--->XE_PSM_CLOSING
369 --> Send DVOX_HANGUP
370 XE->DIGI: 4
371 DVOX: TX TERMINATE_CALL DL 0 : QU 0
372 UNBLOCKING ACTIVITY TIMER
373 -> Disconnect PBX (on-line) from B1
374 --> Send DVOX_DIS_B
375 XE->DIGI: 8
376 XE->DIGI: DIS_B
377 UNBLOCKING ACTIVITY TIMER
378 Relinquishing ISDN B-Channel B1
379 BRINGUP 2
380 ... TDM route B1 64kbps Data - REWRITE
381 0 0:24: 0 isdn2 Meridian Call out idle
382 ==> PBX (Online) XE_PSM_CLOSING--->XE_PSM_IDLE
383 DVOX: RCVD ACK
384 ACK FOR TERMINATE_CALL
385 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
386 DVOX: RCVD ACK
387 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
388 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
389 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
```

**trace (tra)** (continued)

```

390 xxx Hookfault 0x3
391 xe_encap_voice_in msg 0 (ON-HOOK)
392 V1 REPLACE (XE_VSM_HK_OFF_IDLE)
393 ==> V1 XE_VSM_HK_OFF_IDLE--->XE_VSM_IDLE
394 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
395 DVOX: RCVD ACK
396 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
397 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
398 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
399 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
400 DVOX: RCVD ACK
401 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
402 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
403 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
404 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
405 DVOX: RCVD ACK
406 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
407 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
408 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
409 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
410 DVOX: RCVD ACK
411 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
412 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
413 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
414 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
415 DVOX: RCVD ACK
416 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
417 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
418 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
419 - Look for an idle VC:
420 -- Found one!
421 0 0:24:14 isdn2 IONET P Call out
attempt
422 XN_CONNECT from XE:
423 ... From NULL
424 ... To 98774660
425 ... Layer 1 0x0
426 down: XN_CONNECT (72F8AB8 0)
427 up: XN_SETUPACK (72F8AB8 72F85D8)
428 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
429 DVOX: RCVD ACK
430 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
431 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
432 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
433 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
434 DVOX: RCVD ACK

```

**trace (tra)** (continued)

---

```
435 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
436 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
437 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
438 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
439 up: XN_CONNACK (72F8AB8 72F85D8)
440 DVOX: RCVD ACK
441 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
442 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
443 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
444 up: XN_CACTIVE (72F8AB8 72F85D8)
445 XN_CACTIVE - accept call on B1
446 ---> Route outgoing data call to B1 - 0x2 => 64k.
447 ... TDM route B1 64kbps Data - leave alone
448 0 0:24:19 isdn2 IONET P Call out
established (Negotiate PPP)
449 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
450 DVOX: RCVD ACK
451 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
452 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
453 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
454 0 0:24:22 isdn2 IONET P Call out
data transfer state
455 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
456 DVOX: RCVD ACK
457 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
458 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
459 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
460 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
461 DVOX: RCVD ACK
462 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
463 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
464 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
465 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
466 DVOX: RCVD ACK
467 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
468 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
469 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
470 DVOX: TX STATUS_REQUEST DL 0 : QU 0
471 DVOX: RCVD ACK
472 ACK FOR STATUS_REQUEST
473 DVOX: RCVD STATUS_PASS
474 DVOX: TX ACK DL 0 : QU 0
```

---

# upgrade (upg)

---

## Command purpose

The `system upgrade` command allows you to upgrade the router software from a TFTP server on the network.

## Command syntax

The syntax of the `upgrade` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system upgrade
```

## Using the command



### CAUTION

#### Risk of loss of functionality

The router must not, under any circumstances, be switched off until you receive the message that the upgrade has been successfully completed. If you shut down during upgrade your router will not boot. You can restore operation by upgrading the router from a PC that is connected directly to the Admin port.

- 1 To download upgrade software for the router from a TFTP server on the network, enter `system upgrade`.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
Host <Internet address> :
- 2 Enter the TFTP server's IP address.  
*The router prompts as follows:*  
Remote file name :

**upgrade (upg)** (continued)

---

- 3 Enter the name of the upgrade file.

*The file download begins. A message similar to the following appears:*

```
Copying 89.0.3.161 <150v600.upg> to image.128k
Copying 89.0.3.161 <150v600.upg> to image.256k
```

*After the files are copied, the following message appears:*

```
Files copied successfully in... seconds
```

The router restarts automatically.

If your PC or terminal is directly connected to the router's Admin interface, the following message should appear:

```
Verifying upgrade image
Verified Okay
```

Once the upgrade has been completed, you see the following:

```
Upgrade completed successfully
Restarting unit
```

If you are remotely connected to the router across the LAN or WAN, your Telnet session will hang. The upgrade takes about 30 seconds. You can check that the upgrade has been successfully completed by re-entering remote Admin and typing `system version`.

The current software version appears.

## version (v)

---

### Command purpose

The `system version` command displays information on the software version your router is running.

*Note:* You may need this information if you have to contact your supplier for support information, or if you are ordering an upgrade.

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `version` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system version
```

### Using the command

Enter `system version`.

You see a display similar to the following:

```
Product name : HomeOffice Router
Serial number : NNTM420Y100554
Software version : 2.1H D24 (12 May 1998)
MC68360 CPU rev : C
ISDN variant : S/T-ISDN
Time running : 53m 40s
Interfaces : eth1 isdn2
Protocols : bridge ip ipx
ISDN Software Version:
SpiderISDN V2.00.01[160], National ISDN 1 (North America)

Meridian:
Software version : 9.1.5
Hardware rev. : 1.0.0
```

## warnings (w)

---

### Command purpose

The system `warnings` command displays all the possible warning messages on the router.

*Note:* Critical and non-critical warnings are described in the “Troubleshooting” chapter of the *Meridian HomeOffice II User Guide* (NTP 555-8321-205).

### Command syntax

The syntax of the `warnings` command is as follows:

```
HomeOffice: system warnings
```

### Using the command

To display a list of all warnings, enter `system warnings`.

The router lists all the possible warnings with their number. They are presented in two lists: `Critical Warnings` and `Non-Critical Warnings`. Generally, the lower the number, the more serious the warning.

To determine the meaning of a particular warning, enter `system warnings` followed by the warning number. For example, `system warnings 34`.

You see a definition of the warning:

```
Critical warning 34:
```

```
Circuit is not routing
```

---

# Index

---

- ?, universal context 2-17
  - command help 2-17
  - command spelling help 2-18
  - options help 2-17
  - parameters help 2-17
- A**
- accessing
  - an open but idle connection (resume) 2-23
  - the command shell
    - from Local Manager 1-2
    - requirements 1-2
  - with a Telnet session 1-7
    - requirements 1-7
  - with a terminal session 1-4
    - requirements 1-4
    - Windows 3.x 1-4
    - Windows95 1-5
- activate, network interface context 7-12
- activating
  - IPX 6-8
  - link to remote site 7-12
- adding
  - dynamic IPX routes 6-17
  - dynamic IPX services 6-22
  - dynamic routes to routing table 5-21
  - entries to SNMP Manager table 8-5
  - filter attachments 5-54
  - filter element 5-58
  - IPX routes 6-15
  - IPX services 6-20
  - routes to routing table 5-19
  - SAP filters 6-9
  - SNMP communities 8-3
  - voice or data circuit 7-24
- address
  - changing for ISDN interface 7-14
  - displaying
    - for Ethernet interface 7-13
    - for ISDN interface 7-15
    - logical (Internet/Ethernet) 5-5, 5-28
- address
  - ip general context 5-3
  - ip interface context 5-25
  - ipx general context 6-3
  - ipx interface context 6-29
  - network interface context 7-13
- Address and Control Field Compression,
  - enabling 7-8
- admin, non-privileged mode 2-3
- administration
  - mode, entering 2-3
  - password, changing 9-10
- alias, network interface context 7-17
- all interfaces, displaying IP addresses 5-27
- alphabetic list of commands 3-1
- arp
  - ip general context 5-5
  - ip interface context 5-28
- associating
  - a circuit with IP 5-34
  - circuits with IP addresses 5-30
  - IPX with ISDN circuit 6-34

## association

ip interface context 5-30

ipx interface context 6-34

attachments, displaying for filters 5-61

attachments, ip filter context 5-54

auto-detect, using during ISDN  
configuration 9-8**B**

backup, system context 9-3

bandwidth, increasing 7-81

Bandwidth Allocation Protocol (BAP),  
tuning 7-19

bap, network interface context 7-19

BAP, tuning 7-19

boot, top-level context 2-25

## bridge

filters, enabling or disabling 4-30

## port

path cost (defining) 4-9

priority (defining) 4-11

state, enabling or disabling 4-12

priority 4-36

bridge context 4-1

description 4-1

span sub-context 4-35

sub-contexts 4-8

bridge filter context

commands 4-16

description 4-16

bridge general context, description 4-2

bridge interface context, description 4-8

bridge span context, description 4-35

## bridging

configuring on Ethernet interface 7-38

interface(s) 4-8

on interface 7-39

statistics, resetting 4-15

## bridging interface

activating or deactivating IPX 6-8

configuring

IP address 5-3

IPX addressing 6-3

IPX datalink layer 6-6, 6-40

defining entry time-out 4-4

## displaying

for IPX 6-8

IP address 5-4

IPX datalink layer 6-41

the entry time-out 4-3

the forwarding database 4-5

enabling or disabling IPX 6-8

entry time-out 4-3

## SAP

configuring for IPX 6-19

displaying status for IPX 6-19

## bridging priority

configuring 4-36

displaying 4-38

## bridging statistics

displaying 4-14

resetting 4-15

## broadcast destinations

changing 5-13, 5-46

configuring 5-12, 5-45

deleting 5-14, 5-46

displaying 5-15, 5-46

enabling 5-15

## broadcast style 5-26

buffer statistics, displaying 9-20

BUNDLE compression 7-28

**C**

call details, displaying for ISDN

a particular circuit 7-23

all circuits 7-22

## call monitoring

displaying details 7-53

setting rates for 7-52

Callback 7-30, 7-35

accept 7-30

request 7-30

callback, enabling or disabling 7-21

callback, network interface context 7-21

- calling test
    - description 7-69
    - performing 7-73
    - reversing 7-70
    - what happens 7-74
  - calls
    - displaying information about 7-22
    - incoming, displaying rejected 7-54
    - outgoing, displaying rejected 7-55
  - calls, network interface context 7-22
  - Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol 7-56
  - changing
    - administration password 9-10
    - broadcast destinations 5-13, 5-46
    - data filters 4-23
    - default circuit 7-36
    - filter contents 5-62
    - interface sub-context name 7-17
    - IP address and circuit associations 5-31
    - IPX association with ISDN circuit 6-36, 6-38
    - IPX routes 6-17
    - IPX services 6-22
    - ISDN interface address 7-14
    - PBX circuit 7-32
    - prompt message 9-11
    - routes in routing table 5-20
    - SAP filters 6-10
    - signon message 9-19
    - SNMP
      - communities 8-3
      - Manager table entries 8-6
      - traps setup 8-8
    - voice or data circuit 7-33
  - CHAP 7-56
  - circuit
    - adding, voice or data 7-24
    - associating with IP 5-34
    - changing
      - default circuit 7-36
      - PBX 7-32
      - voice or data 7-33
    - deleting 7-36
    - displaying 7-37
      - default circuit users 7-43
      - details for all 7-36
    - name 7-25
    - priority 7-77
    - state 7-34
    - table, displaying for IPX 6-39
    - timers, configuring for ISDN 7-75
  - circuit
    - bridge interface context 4-9
    - ip interface context 5-34
    - ipx interface context 6-38
    - network interface context 7-24
  - circuits
    - associating
      - ISDN with IPX 6-34
      - with IP 5-30
    - changing
      - association of ISDN with IPX 6-36, 6-38
      - IP address associations 5-31
      - parameters 7-77
    - configuring 5-34
    - deleting
      - association of ISDN with IPX 6-36
      - IP address associations 5-32
    - disabling IPX routing over ISDN 6-35
    - displaying 5-35
      - association of ISDN with IPX 6-37
      - IP address associations 5-32
    - permanent or demand 7-77
    - tuned, displaying 7-83
    - tuning 7-77
    - virtual, displaying statistics for
      - a particular circuit 7-84
      - all circuits 7-84
  - close, universal context 2-14
  - closing
    - a connection 2-14
    - a session 2-22
    - remote administration session 2-22
  - collecting, information packets 7-3
-

**command**

- activate 7-12
- address 5-3, 5-25, 6-3, 6-29, 7-13
- admin 2-3
- alias 7-17
- arp 5-5, 5-28
- association 5-30, 6-34
- attachments 5-54
- backup 9-3
- bap 7-19
- boot 2-25
- callback 7-21
- calls 7-22
- circuit 4-9, 5-34, 6-38, 7-24
- close 2-14
- community 8-2
- configuration 9-4
- configure 4-3, 4-11, 4-36, 7-38
- connections 2-15
- copy 5-56
- create 5-57
- data 4-17
- datalink 6-6, 6-40
- decode 7-3
- default 7-43
- destination 4-27
- dhcp 5-6
- diat 5-36, 6-42
- display 5-61
- edit 5-62, 9-5
- enabled 4-12, 4-30, 4-39, 5-8, 5-39, 6-8, 6-43, 7-44
- fault 2-4, 2-26
- filtersap 6-9
- forward 4-5, 4-13, 5-9, 6-12
- help 2-5, 2-17
- icmp 5-10, 5-41
- isdn 9-6
- lookup 5-43, 6-45
- manager 8-5
- more 9-9
- multilink 7-6, 7-46
- open 2-19
- password 9-10
- ping 2-20
- port 4-40
- ppp 7-8, 7-49
- prompt 9-11
- protocols 9-12
- quit 2-6, 2-22
- rates 7-52
- rejects 7-54
- relay 5-12, 5-44
- remove 5-66
- reset 4-42, 9-14
- restore 9-16
- resume 2-23
- rip 5-16, 5-47, 6-14, 6-46
- route 5-19, 6-15
- sap 6-19, 6-48
- save 9-17
- security 7-56, 9-18
- service 6-20
- signon 9-19
- source 4-31
- spoof 5-51
- statistics 2-7, 2-27, 4-6, 4-14, 4-34, 5-22, 6-25, 7-63, 9-20
- status 2-8, 2-28, 4-43, 7-68
- store 9-21
- test 5-67, 7-69
- timeout 9-22
- timer 7-75
- trace 9-23
- traps 8-8
- tune 7-77
- upgrade 9-35
- validate 8-11
- vcs 7-84
- version 9-37
- warnings 9-38
- command interface timeout
  - configuring 9-22
  - displaying 9-22
- command recall, editing 9-5
- command shell, accessing
  - from Local Manager 1-2
  - requirements 1-2

- with a Telnet session 1-7
  - requirements 1-7
- with a terminal session 1-4
  - requirements 1-4
  - Windows 3.x 1-4
  - Windows95 1-5
- commands
  - entering (privileged mode) 2-11
  - navigating in privileged mode 2-11
  - quick reference 3-1
  - reference table
    - all commands (alphabetic) 3-1
    - bridge context 4-1
    - bridge filter context 4-16
    - bridge general context 4-2
    - bridge interface context 4-8
    - bridge span context 4-35
    - ip context 5-1
    - ip filter context 5-52
    - ip general context 5-2
    - ip interface context 5-23
    - ipx context 6-1
    - ipx general context 6-2
    - ipx interface context 6-27
    - network context 7-1
    - network general context 7-2
    - network interface context 7-10
    - non-privileged mode 2-2
    - privileged mode 2-9
    - snmp context 8-1
    - system context 9-1
    - top-level context 2-24
    - universal context 2-13
  - using shortcuts (privileged mode) 2-12
- communities, SNMP
  - adding 8-3
  - changing 8-3
  - deleting 8-3
  - displaying 8-4
- community table
  - adding communities 8-3
  - changing communities 8-3
  - deleting communities 8-3
  - displaying communities 8-4
- community, snmp context 8-2
- compression 7-8
- configuration
  - backup, creating 9-3
  - resetting to factory defaults 9-14
  - restoring 9-16
  - saving 9-17
  - system, displaying 9-4
  - user, encrypting 9-18
- configuration, system context 9-4
- configure
  - bridge general context 4-3
  - bridge interface context 4-11
  - bridge span context 4-36
  - network interface context 7-38
- configuring
  - bridging on Ethernet interface 7-38
  - bridging priority 4-36
  - broadcast destinations 5-12, 5-45
  - command interface timeout 9-22
  - data filters 4-17
  - data filters mode 4-25
  - destination filters 4-27
  - destination filters mode 4-28
  - DHCP 5-6
  - Ethernet interface for bridging 4-11
  - ICMP redirects 5-10, 5-41
  - IP address for bridging interface 5-3
  - IP addresses 5-25
  - IPX
    - addressing 6-3
    - datalink layer 6-6
  - IPX addressing
    - all interfaces 6-29
    - Ethernet 6-31
    - ISDN 6-33
  - IPX datalink layer 6-40
  - ISDN 9-6
    - circuit timers 7-75
    - interface (router to PBX) 7-39
    - interface for bridging 4-9
    - using auto-detect 9-8
  - PPP 7-8, 7-49
  - PPP multilink 7-6

- rates for call monitoring 7-52
- RIP for IPX 6-46
- routing on Ethernet interface 7-38
- SAP filters 6-9
- source filters 4-31
  - packets to be forwarded 4-32
- connection
  - closing 2-14
  - displaying status 7-68
  - establishing to host 2-19
  - information, displaying 2-15
  - resuming 2-23
- connections, universal context 2-15
  - displaying details 2-16
- contexts
  - introduction 2-9
  - top-level 2-24
  - universal 2-13
- continuous information stream, displaying
  - (system trace) 9-23
- conventions, typographical
  - command line interfaces xiii
  - graphical user interfaces xiv
- copy, ip filter context 5-56
- copying
  - configuration (from host to router) 9-16
  - configuration to TFTP host 9-3
  - filters 5-56
- counter, resetting statistics 7-67
- create, ip filter context 5-57
- creating
  - backup of configuration 9-3
  - filters 5-57
- D**
- data circuit
  - adding 7-24
  - changing 7-33
  - deleting 7-36
  - displaying 7-37
- Data compression 7-27
- data filters
  - changing 4-23
  - configuring 4-17
  - deleting 4-24
  - displaying 4-26
  - mode, defining 4-25
- data, bridge filter context 4-17
- datagrams (sent and received)
  - displaying for IPX routing 6-25
- datalink
  - ipx general context 6-6
  - ipx interface context 6-40
- deactivating IPX 6-8
- decode status, displaying 7-5
- decode, network general context 7-3
- decoding, information packets 7-3
- default circuit
  - changing 7-36
  - displaying who is using 7-43
- default, network interface context 7-43
- defining the entry-timeout 4-3, 4-4
- deleting 8-3
  - attachments 5-55
  - broadcast destinations 5-14, 5-46
  - data filters 4-24
  - destination filters 4-28
  - entries from SNMP Manager table 8-6
  - filter attachments 5-55
  - filter contents 5-64
  - filters from filter table 5-66
  - IP address and circuit associations 5-32
  - IP addresses 5-26
  - IPX association with ISDN circuit 6-36
  - IPX routes 6-17
  - IPX services 6-22
  - PBX circuit 7-36
  - routes from routing table 5-20
  - SAP filters 6-11
  - snmp communities 8-3
  - source filters 4-31
  - voice or data circuit 7-36
- destination filters
  - configuring 4-27
  - deleting 4-28
  - displaying 4-29
  - mode configuration 4-28
- destination, bridge filter context 4-27

- DHCP, configuring 5-6
- dhcp, ip general context 5-6
- DIAT
  - configuring for IP 5-36
  - configuring for IPX 6-42
- diat
  - ip interface context 5-36
  - ipx interface context 6-42
- Digital Pathways, and HomeOffice Router 7-12
- directory structure, displaying for non-volatile memory 9-21
- disabling
  - an interface 7-44
  - bridge static filters 4-30
  - callback 7-21
  - filtering of SNMP requests 8-11
  - IP 5-8
  - IP on an interface 5-39
  - IPX 6-8
  - IPX routing 6-43
  - IPX routing on ISDN circuit 6-35
  - protocols 9-12
  - RIP for IPX 6-14, 6-46
  - Spanning Tree Algorithm 4-39
  - spoofing on the Ethernet interface 5-51
- discards (transmit and receive), displaying statistics 7-65
- display, ip filter context 5-61
- displaying
  - attachments 5-55
  - bridging priority 4-38
  - bridging static filter statistics 4-34
  - bridging statistics 4-14
  - broadcast destinations 5-15, 5-46
  - buffer statistics 9-20
  - call monitoring details 7-53
  - circuits 5-35
  - command interface timeout 9-22
  - configuration information 9-4
  - connection information 2-15
  - continuous stream of information (system trace) 9-23
  - data filters 4-26
  - decode status 7-5
  - destination filters 4-29
  - details for all circuits 7-36
  - discards statistics (transmit and receive) 7-65
  - dynamic IPX services 6-22
  - entry-timeout 4-3
  - errors statistics (transmit and receive) 7-66
  - Ethernet interface address 7-13
  - failed calls 7-55
  - filter attachments 5-55
  - filter elements and attachments 5-61
  - filtering of SNMP setup 8-11
  - frame and packet statistics 7-63
  - frames, transmitted and received 2-7, 2-27
    - bridging interface 4-6
    - statistics 7-63
  - ICMP
    - redirect settings 5-42
    - redirects 5-11
  - interface status 2-8, 2-28
  - internal buffer (system trace) 9-23
  - IP
    - address
      - and circuit associations 5-32
      - for an interface 5-40
      - for bridging interface 5-4
    - addresses 5-27
    - forwarding table 5-9
    - routing statistics 5-22
    - status 5-8
  - IPX
    - addressing 6-33
    - association with ISDN circuit 6-37
    - circuit table 6-39
    - datalink layer 6-41
    - enabled interfaces 6-8
    - forwarding table 6-12
    - lookup failures 6-45
    - routes 6-18
    - routing 6-44
    - routing statistics 6-25

ISDN

- call details, a particular circuit 7-23
- call details, all circuits 7-22
- configuration 7-42
- interface address 7-15
- layers 2 and 3 information (system trace) 9-23
- logical addresses (Internet/Ethernet) 5-5, 5-28
- lookup failures 5-43
- memory statistics 9-20
- network connection status 7-68
- non-volatile memory
  - directory structure 9-21
  - statistics 9-21
- PBX circuit details 7-37
- PPP configuration 7-51
- PPP Multilink configuration 7-48
- protocol status 9-13
- queue statistics 9-20
- rates statistics (transmit and receive) 7-64
- rejected incoming calls 7-54
- rejected outgoing calls 7-55
- RIP status 5-18, 5-49
- RIP status for IPX 6-14, 6-47
- router software version 9-37
- routes in routing table 5-21
- SAP filters 6-11
- security configuring details 7-61
- SNMP
  - communities 8-4
  - Manager table 8-6
  - traps setup 8-10
- source filters 4-33
- Spanning Tree port status 4-40
- Spanning Tree status 4-43
- start-up problems 2-4
  - details 2-26
- static IPX services 6-23
- status of all interfaces 7-45
- stream statistics 9-20
- system configuration 9-4
- the forwarding database 4-13
- tuned circuits 7-83

- voice or data circuit details 7-37
- warning messages 9-38
- warnings 9-38
- dividing screen blocks of information 9-9
- DTE address 7-13
- Dynamic
  - Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), configuring 5-6
  - IP Address Translation (DIAT) configuring for IP 5-36
  - IPX Address Translation (DIAT) configuring for IPX 6-42
- dynamic routes, adding to IP routing table 5-21
- dynamic Service table
  - displaying dynamic and static entries 6-22
  - displaying static entries only 6-23

**E**

- edit
  - insert 5-64
  - move 5-65
- edit
  - ip filter context 5-62
  - system context 9-5
- editing
  - command recall 9-5
  - filter contents 5-62
- elements, displaying for filters 5-61
- enabled
  - bridge filter context 4-30
  - bridge interface context 4-12
  - bridge span context 4-39
  - ip general context 5-8
  - ip interface context 5-39
  - ipx general context 6-8
  - ipx interface context 6-43
  - network interface context 7-44
- enabling
  - Address and Control Field Compression 7-8
  - an interface 7-44
  - bridge static filters 4-30
  - broadcast destinations 5-15

- callback 7-21
- filtering of SNMP requests 8-11
- IP 5-8
- IP on an interface 5-39
- IPX 6-8
- IPX routing 6-43
- PPP Multilink 7-6
- Protocol Field Compression 7-8
- protocols 9-12
- RIP 5-16
- RIP for IPX 6-14, 6-46
- RIP on an interface 5-47
- security 7-56
  - CHAP 7-57
  - PAP 7-58
  - SPAP 7-60
- Spanning Tree Algorithm 4-39
- spoofing on the Ethernet interface 5-51
- encrypting information 9-18
- entering
  - commands (privileged mode) 2-11
  - the administration mode 2-3
- error types 6-25
- errors (transmit and receive), displaying
  - statistics 7-66
- establishing a connection to a host 2-19
- Ethernet interface
  - configuring 7-38
    - bridging 7-38
    - for bridging 4-11
    - IP addresses 5-25
    - IPX addressing 6-31
    - routing 7-38
  - deleting IP addresses 5-26
  - DIAT, configuring 5-37
  - displaying
    - address 7-13
    - IP address 5-27, 5-40
  - enabling or disabling
    - a bridge port 4-12
    - IP 5-39
    - spoofing 5-51
  - IP relay addresses
    - changing 5-46
    - configuring 5-45
    - deleting 5-46
    - displaying 5-46
  - exiting
    - non-privileged mode 2-6
    - privileged mode 2-22
- F**
- failures, lookup
  - displaying 5-43
  - displaying IPX 6-45
- fault
  - non-privileged mode 2-4
  - top-level context 2-26
- filter attachments
  - adding 5-54
  - deleting 5-55
  - displaying 5-55
- filters
  - changing contents 5-62
  - copying 5-56
  - creating 5-57
  - data 4-17
  - deleting contents 5-64
  - deleting from filter table 5-66
  - destination 4-27
  - displaying elements and attachments 5-61
  - editing contents 5-62
  - inserting 5-64
  - moving contents 5-65
  - SAP
    - adding 6-9
    - changing 6-10
    - deleting 6-11
    - displaying 6-11
    - statistics 4-34
    - testing elements 5-67
- filtersap, ipx general context 6-9
- forward
  - broadcasts 5-4, 5-26, 6-4
  - command 4-5, 4-13, 5-9, 6-12
  - delay 4-37

forward  
  bridge general context 4-5  
  bridge interface context 4-13  
  ip general context 5-9  
  ipx general context 6-12  
forwarding  
  database, displaying 4-5, 4-13  
  table, displaying IPX 6-12  
  UDP, NetBIOS, and BootP packets 5-13,  
    5-14  
frames  
  displaying for bridging interface 4-6  
  resetting for bridging interface 4-6  
  transmitted and received  
    displaying 2-7, 2-27  
    displaying statistics 7-63

## G

group address 4-38  
guaranteed call time 7-79

## H

hello time 4-37  
help  
  non-privileged mode 2-5  
  universal context  
    command help 2-17  
    command spelling help 2-18  
    options help 2-17  
    parameters help 2-17  
help, universal context 2-17  
Higher Layer Compatibility (HLC) 7-41  
hold-down timer 5-26, 6-33  
HomeOffice Router  
  Digital Pathways 7-12  
  SecurID 7-12  
hops 6-16  
  number 6-21

## I

ICMP  
  Echo Requests, sending 2-20  
  redirect messages 5-10

icmp  
  ip general context 5-10  
  ip interface context 5-41  
incoming calls, displaying rejected 7-54  
inserting, filters 5-64  
interface  
  bridging  
    defining entry time-out 4-4  
    displaying the entry time-out 4-3  
    entry time-out 4-3  
  cost, configuring 5-16, 5-47  
  enabling or disabling 7-44  
  Ethernet, enabling or disabling a bridge  
    port 4-12  
  ISDN, configuring for bridging 4-9  
  status, displaying 2-8, 2-28, 7-45  
internal buffer, displaying (system trace) 9-23  
Internet address  
  bridging 5-3  
  into Ethernet address, converting 5-5, 5-28  
Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)  
  Echo Requests, sending 2-20  
  redirect settings, displaying 5-42  
  redirects  
    configuring 5-10, 5-41  
    displaying 5-11  
IP  
  address 5-26  
  configuring for bridging interface 5-3  
  displaying for an interface 5-40  
  displaying for bridging interface 5-4  
  addresses  
    associating with circuits 5-30  
    changing circuit associations 5-31  
    configuring 5-25  
    deleting 5-26  
    deleting circuit associations 5-32  
    displaying 5-27  
    displaying circuit associations 5-32  
  addressing, configuring 6-3  
  Association Lookup Failures 5-43  
  enabling or disabling 5-8  
  on interface 5-39

- forwarding table 5-9
  - displaying 5-9
- relay addresses
  - changing 5-13, 5-46
  - configuring 5-12, 5-45
  - deleting 5-14, 5-46
  - displaying 5-15, 5-46
  - enabling 5-15
- routing statistics, displaying 5-22
- routing table
  - adding routes 5-19
  - changing routes 5-20
  - deleting routes 5-20
  - displaying 5-21
  - storing dynamic routes 5-21
  - status, displaying 5-8
- ip context, description 5-1
- ip filter context, description 5-52
- ip general context, description 5-2
- ip interface context, description 5-23
- ip interface filter sub-context, description 5-52
- IPX
  - activating or deactivating 6-8
  - adding
    - dynamic routes 6-17
    - routes 6-15
  - address 6-3
  - addressing
    - configuring
      - all interfaces 6-29
      - Ethernet 6-31
      - ISDN 6-33
    - displaying 6-33
  - associating with ISDN circuit 6-34
  - Association Lookup Failures 6-45
  - changing
    - association with ISDN circuit 6-36, 6-38
    - routes 6-17
  - Circuit Table 6-38
  - configuring SAP 6-19
  - datalink layer 6-6
    - configuring 6-6, 6-40
    - displaying 6-41
  - deleting
    - association with ISDN circuit 6-36
    - routes 6-17
  - disabling routing on ISDN circuit 6-35
  - displaying
    - association with ISDN circuit 6-37
    - circuit table 6-39
    - enabled interfaces 6-8
    - RIP status 6-14, 6-47
    - routes 6-18
    - routing 6-44
    - SAP status 6-19
  - enabling or disabling 6-8, 6-43
    - across circuit 6-35
    - RIP 6-14, 6-46
    - routing 6-43
  - forwarding table, displaying 6-12
  - interface sub-contexts 6-27
  - lookup failures, displaying 6-45
  - routing statistics 6-25
    - displaying 6-25
  - Routing table 6-15
  - SAP
    - configuring 6-48
    - displaying status 6-49
  - services
    - adding 6-20
    - adding dynamic 6-22
    - changing 6-22
    - deleting 6-22
    - displaying dynamic 6-22
    - displaying static 6-23
  - spoofing 6-4
  - ipx context, description 6-1
  - ipx general context, description 6-2
  - ipx interface context, description 6-27
- ISDN
  - address to call 7-25
  - circuits
    - associating with IPX 6-34
    - changing association with IPX 6-36, 6-38

- deleting association with IPX 6-36
- disabling IPX routing 6-35
- displaying association with IPX 6-37
- configuring 9-6
  - using auto-detect 9-8
- connection type 7-39
- displaying
  - call details, a particular circuit 7-23
  - call details, all circuits 7-22
  - layers 2 and 3 information (system trace) 9-23
- interface
  - changing address 7-14
  - configuring
    - for bridging 4-9
    - IP addresses 5-25
    - IPX addressing 6-33
  - configuring (router to PBX) 7-39
  - deleting IP addresses 5-26
  - DIAT, configuring 5-36
  - displaying
    - address 7-15
    - configuration 7-42
    - IP address 5-40
  - displaying IP address 5-27
  - enabling or disabling IP 5-39
  - IP relay addresses
    - changing 5-46
    - configuring 5-45
    - deleting 5-46
    - displaying 5-46
- testing 7-69
  - calling test
    - description 7-69
    - performing 7-73
    - reversing 7-70
    - what happens 7-74
  - listening test
    - description 7-69
    - performing 7-73
    - reversing 7-70
    - what happens 7-74

- loopback test
  - description 7-69
  - failure troubleshooting 7-72
  - performing 7-70
  - reasons for failure 7-72
- timers, configuring 7-75
- isdn, system context 9-6

## L

- layer, datalink
  - configuring 6-6, 6-40
  - displaying 6-41
- learn routes 6-17
- LINK compression 7-28
- Link Control Protocol (LCP) 7-51
- Link Quality Monitoring (LQM),
  - description 7-49
- link, activating 7-12
- listening test
  - description 7-69
  - performing 7-73
  - reversing 7-70
  - what happens 7-74
- logical addresses, displaying
  - (Internet/Ethernet) 5-5, 5-28
- lookup
  - ip interface context 5-43
  - ipx interface context 6-45
- lookup failures 5-43, 6-45
- loopback test
  - description 7-69
  - failure troubleshooting 7-72
  - performing 7-70
  - reasons for failure 7-72
- LQM, description 7-49

## M

- Manager table, SNMP
  - adding entries 8-5
  - changing entries 8-6
  - configuring 8-5
  - deleting entries 8-6
  - displaying 8-6
- manager, snmp context 8-5

maximum age 4-37  
 media type 7-39  
 memory statistics, displaying 9-20  
 Meridian circuit  
   changing 7-32  
   deleting 7-36  
   displaying 7-37  
 message  
   changing prompt 9-11  
   changing signon 9-19  
 messages, displaying warning 9-38  
 minimum call timer 7-78  
 modes, description  
   non-privileged 2-1  
   non-privileged commands 2-2  
   privileged 2-1  
   privileged commands 2-9  
 monitoring calls 7-52  
 more, system context 9-9  
 moving, filter contents 5-65  
 multilink  
   network general context 7-6  
   network interface context 7-46  
 Multilink, PPP  
   displaying configuration 7-48  
   enabling 7-6  
   tuning 7-7, 7-46  
  
**N**  
 navigating between commands, privileged  
   mode 2-11  
 NetBIOS 6-30  
   packets 6-4  
 network address, associating with circuit 6-34,  
   6-35, 6-38, 6-39  
 network context, description 7-1  
 network general context, description 7-2  
 network interface context, description 7-10  
 next hop router 5-20  
 node address 6-29  
   associating with circuit 6-34, 6-35, 6-38,  
   6-39

non-privileged mode  
   commands 2-2  
   description 2-1  
   exiting 2-6  
   overview 2-9  
 non-volatile memory  
   directory structure, displaying 9-21  
   statistics, displaying 9-21  
 number of hops 6-21  
 number of ticks 6-3, 6-29  
 numbering plan identification 7-40

## O

open, universal context 2-19  
 outgoing calls, displaying rejected 7-55  
 overview  
   network general sub-context 7-2  
   network interface sub-context 7-10  
   SYSTEM context 9-1  
   top level 2-24  
   universal context 2-13

## P

PABX 7-40  
 packets, collecting and decoding 7-3  
 paginating output with more command 9-9  
 PAP 7-56  
 Password Authentication Protocol 7-56  
 password, changing administration 9-10  
 password, system context 9-10  
 path optimization 4-38  
 PBX  
   circuit  
     changing 7-32  
     deleting 7-36  
     displaying 7-37  
   configuring ISDN interface-to-router  
     connection 7-39  
 physical address 6-29  
 ping, universal context 2-20  
 port status, displaying Spanning Tree 4-40  
 port, bridge span context 4-40

**PPP**

- configuring 7-8, 7-49
- displaying configuration 7-51

**ppp**

- network general context 7-8
- network interface context 7-49

**PPP Multilink**

- displaying configuration 7-48
- enabling 7-6
- tuning 7-7, 7-46

**PREDICTOR compression 7-27**

**privileged mode**

- commands 2-9
- description 2-1
- exiting 2-22
- navigating 2-11
- overview 2-9

**prompt message, changing 9-11**

**prompt, system context 9-11**

**Protocol Field Compression, enabling 7-8**

**protocols**

- command 9-12
- displaying status 9-13
- enabling and disabling 9-12
- enabling or disabling 9-12
- system context 9-12

**Q**

**queue statistics, displaying 9-20**

**quick reference table of commands  
(alphabetic) 3-1**

**quit**

- non-privileged mode 2-6
- universal context 2-22

**quitting a session 2-22**

**R**

**Rapport Dialup Switch 112 and HomeOffice  
Router 7-12**

**rates (transmit and receive), statistics  
displaying 7-64**

**rates, network interface context 7-52**

**recall of commands, editing 9-5**

**reference, alphabetical list of commands 3-1**

**rejected calls**

- displaying incoming 7-54
- displaying outgoing 7-55
- monitoring 7-55

**rejects, network interface context 7-54**

**relay**

- ip general context 5-12
- ip interface context 5-44

**remote**

- administration session, closing 2-22
- site, activating link to 7-12

**remove, ip filter context 5-66**

**renaming the interface sub-context 7-17**

**reset**

- bridge span context 4-42
- system context 9-14

**resetting**

- bridging statistics 4-15
- configuration (to factory defaults) 9-14
- frames, bridging interface 4-6
- Spanning Tree 4-42
- statistics counter 7-67

**restarting the router 2-25**

**restore, system context 9-16**

**restoring router configuration 9-16**

**resume, universal context 2-23**

**resuming a connection 2-23**

**RIP**

- configuring for IPX 6-46
- displaying status 5-18, 5-49
- displaying status for IPX 6-14, 6-47
- enabling 5-16
- enabling on an interface 5-47
- enabling or disabling 5-47, 5-51, 6-14, 6-47
  - for IPX 6-14, 6-46
- interface cost 5-48
- mode 5-34, 6-39
- triggered 7-29
- triggered retry count 5-48

**rip**

- ip general context 5-16
- ip interface context 5-47
- ipx general context 6-14
- ipx interface context 6-46

RIP/SAP Hold-Down Timer 6-32  
route  
  ip general context 5-19  
  ipx general context 6-15  
router  
  configuration  
    encrypting 9-18  
    resetting to factory defaults 9-14  
    restoring 9-16  
    saving 9-17  
  restarting 2-25  
  software  
    upgrading 9-35  
    version, displaying 9-37  
routes, learning 6-17  
routing  
  configuring on Ethernet interface 7-38  
  displaying for IPX 6-44  
  enabling or disabling for IPX 6-43  
  on interface 7-39  
  table, IP  
    adding dynamic routes 5-21  
    adding routes 5-19  
    changing routes 5-20  
    deleting routes 5-20  
    displaying 5-21  
  table, IPX 6-15  
    adding dynamic routes 6-17  
    adding routes 6-15  
    changing routes 6-17  
    deleting routes 6-17  
    displaying routes 6-18  
Routing Information Protocol (RIP)  
  configuring for IPX 6-46  
  displaying  
    status 5-18, 5-49  
    status for IPX 6-14, 6-47  
  enabling 5-16  
    on an interface 5-47  
  enabling or disabling for IPX 6-14, 6-46

## S

SAP  
  configuring for IPX 6-19, 6-48  
  displaying status for IPX 6-19, 6-49  
  enabling or disabling 6-48  
  mode 6-39  
  triggered 7-29  
sap  
  ipx general context 6-19  
  ipx interface context 6-48  
SAP filters  
  adding 6-9  
  changing 6-10  
  deleting 6-11  
  displaying 6-11  
save, system context 9-17  
saving the configuration 9-17  
screen, dividing blocks of information 9-9  
SecurID, and HomeOffice Router 7-12  
security  
  displaying configuration 7-61  
  enabling 7-56  
    CHAP 7-57  
    PAP 7-58  
    SPAP 7-60  
security  
  network interface context 7-56  
  system context 9-18  
selecting SNMP traps 8-8  
self identification 7-40  
Service Advertising Protocol (SAP)  
  configuring for IPX 6-19, 6-48  
  displaying status for IPX 6-19, 6-49  
Service Table 6-20, 6-23  
service type 6-21  
service, ipx general context 6-20  
services  
  adding  
    dynamic for IPX 6-22  
    for IPX 6-20  
  changing for IPX 6-22

- deleting for IPX 6-22
- displaying
  - dynamic for IPX 6-22
  - static for IPX 6-23
- setting
  - physical parameters 7-38
  - rates for call monitoring 7-52
- Shiva Password Authentication Protocol 7-56
- signon
  - command 9-19
  - message (changing) 9-19
- signon, system context 9-19
- SNMP
  - changing traps setup 8-8
  - communities 8-3
    - adding 8-3
    - changing 8-3
    - displaying 8-4
  - displaying
    - filtering setup 8-11
    - traps setup 8-10
  - enabling or disabling filtering 8-11
  - filtering requests 8-5
  - management 8-2
  - Manager table
    - adding entries 8-5
    - changing entries 8-6
    - configuring 8-5
    - deleting entries 8-6
    - displaying 8-6
  - specifying traps 8-8
  - traps 8-6
- snmp context, description 8-1
- socket number 6-21
- software
  - displaying version 9-37
  - upgrading for router 9-35
- source filters
  - configuring 4-31
  - defining packets to be forwarded 4-32
  - deleting 4-31
  - displaying 4-33
- source, bridge filter context 4-31
- Spanning Tree
  - Algorithm
    - definition 4-35
    - enabling or disabling 4-39
  - bridge priority 4-36
  - configuration, displaying 4-38
  - configuring 4-36
  - enabling or disabling 4-39
  - port status, displaying 4-40
  - resetting 4-42
  - status, displaying 4-43
- SPAP 7-56
- SPIDER compression 7-27
- spoof, ip interface context 5-51
- spoofing 6-4
- SPX Spoofing 6-5
- STAC compression 7-27
- start-up problems
  - details, displaying 2-26
  - displaying 2-4
- static filter statistics, displaying for
  - bridging 4-34
- static routes 6-15
- statistics
  - counter, resetting 7-67
  - displaying
    - for virtual circuits, a particular circuit 7-84
    - for virtual circuits, all circuits 7-84
    - transmit and receive discards 7-65
    - transmit and receive errors 7-66
    - transmit and receive rates 7-64
    - transmitted and received frames 7-63
  - non-volatile memory, displaying 9-21
- statistics
  - bridge filter context 4-34
  - bridge general context 4-6
  - bridge interface context 4-14
  - ip general context 5-22
  - ipx general context 6-25
  - network interface context 7-63
  - non-privileged mode 2-7
  - system context 9-20
  - top-level context 2-27

status  
 bridge span context 4-43  
 network interface context 7-68  
 non-privileged mode 2-8  
 top-level context 2-28

status, displaying for network connection 7-68

store, system context 9-21

stream statistics, displaying 9-20

sub-context name, changing for interface 7-17

syslog daemon 8-6

system  
 configuration, displaying 9-4  
 protocols  
 displaying status 9-13  
 enabling or disabling 9-12

trace  
 displaying  
 continuous stream 9-23  
 internal buffer 9-23  
 ISDN layers 2 and 3  
 information 9-23  
 output sample 9-24

system context, description 9-1

## T

table, routing  
 adding  
 dynamic IP routes 5-21  
 dynamic IPX routes 6-17  
 IP routes 5-19  
 IPX routes 6-15

changing  
 IP routes 5-20  
 IPX routes 6-17

deleting  
 IP routes 5-20  
 IPX routes 6-17

displaying  
 IP routes 5-21  
 IPX routes 6-18

Telnet connection, establishing 2-19

test  
 ip filter context 5-67  
 network interface context 7-69

test, calling and listening 7-73

testing  
 connections 2-20  
 filter contents 5-67  
 ISDN 7-69  
 calling test  
 description 7-69  
 performing 7-73  
 reversing 7-70  
 what happens 7-74  
 listening test  
 description 7-69  
 performing 7-73  
 reversing 7-70  
 what happens 7-74  
 loopback test  
 description 7-69  
 failure troubleshooting 7-72  
 performing 7-70  
 reasons for failure 7-72

ticks 6-16, 6-30

timeout  
 command interface  
 configuring 9-22  
 displaying 9-22  
 configuring 4-3  
 specifying length 9-22

timeout, system context 9-22

timer, network interface context 7-75

timers, configuring for ISDN 7-75

top-level context commands 2-24

trace, system  
 displaying  
 continuous stream 9-23  
 internal buffer 9-23  
 ISDN layers 2 and 3 information 9-23  
 output sample 9-24

trace, system context 9-23

traffic load  
  duration 7-82  
  percentage value 7-82

traps  
  changing setup for SNMP 8-8  
  displaying setup for SNMP 8-10  
  selecting for SNMP 8-8

traps, snmp context 8-8

triggered  
  retry  
    count 5-17, 6-47, 6-49  
    interval 6-49  
  update circuit management 7-35

tune, network interface context 7-77

tuning  
  Bandwidth Allocation Protocol (BAP) 7-19  
  circuits 7-77  
  circuits, displaying 7-83  
  PPP Multilink 7-7, 7-46

typographical conventions  
  command line interfaces xiii  
  graphical user interfaces xiv

## U

universal context commands 2-13

upgrade, system context 9-35

upgrading router software 9-35

user configuration, encrypting 9-18

using shortcuts (privileged mode) 2-12

## V

validate, snmp context 8-11

vcs, network interface context 7-84

version, displaying for router software 9-37

version, system context 9-37

virtual circuits  
  displaying statistics  
    a particular circuit 7-84  
    all circuits 7-84  
  maximum number 7-79

voice circuit  
  adding 7-24  
  changing 7-33  
  deleting 7-36  
  displaying 7-37

## W

warnings, displaying 9-38

warnings, system context 9-38

Watchdog Spoofing 6-4, 6-30



Meridian  
**HomeOffice II**  
Command Shell User Guide

© 1998 Northern Telecom  
All rights reserved

All information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Northern Telecom reserves the right to make changes to equipment design or program components, as progress in engineering, manufacturing methods, or other circumstances may warrant.

NORTEL, the NORTEL Globemark, RAPPORT, and MERIDIAN are trademarks of Northern Telecom.

MICROSOFT, MS-DOS, and WINDOWS are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. NETWARE is a trademark of Novell, Inc. UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, exclusively licensed through X/OPEN Company Limited. SHIVA is a trademark of Shiva Corporation.

555-8321-910  
Release 2.1 Standard 01.01  
July 1998

**NORTEL**  
NORTHERN TELECOM